942.03
Fro/Chr
36223

BOMBAY BRANCH
OF THE
Royal Asiatic Society.
CLASS

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 28 September, 2015

۱۰۱ ۱۱۰۵۰

SIR JOHN FROISSART'S,

CHRONICLES,

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN,

AND THE

ADJOINING COUNTRIES,

FROM THE LATTER PART OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD II.
TO THE CORONATION OF HENRY IV.

NEWLY TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH EDITIONS,
WITH VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS FROM MANY CELEBRATED MSS.

By THOMAS JOHNES.

36223
oc

Who so shall telle a tale after a man,
He moste rehe ſe, as neighe as ever he can,
Everich wo de, if it be in his charge,
All ſpeke he never ſo rudely and ſo large;
Or elles he moste tellen his tale untrewe,
Or feinen thinges, or finden wordes newe.

CHAUCER'S PROLOGUE.

THE THIRD EDITION.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,
A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR, AN ESSAY ON HIS WORKS,
A CRITICISM ON HIS HISTORY,
AND A DISSERTATION ON HIS POETRY,

VOL. V.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND ORME, PATERNOSTER-ROW;
AND J. WHITE, FLEET-STREET.

1808.

11 11 : 4 · 1

ref. 942.04

942.03
Fro/Chr
36223

00036223

Brooke Printer, Paternoster-Row.

THE

CONTENTS

OF

THE FIFTH VOLUME.

CHAP. I. THE English, at this Period, make Excursions into various Parts of the Kingdom of France.—The melancholy Death of Evan of Wales Page 1

II. The Inhabitants of Evreux surrender to the French.—The two Armies assemble before St. Malo - - 9

III. The English raise the Siege of Mortain - - - - 15

IV. The English recover several strong Castles from the French in the Bourdelois - - - - 18

V. The Mine which the English had made at St. Malo fails:—In consequence, the Siege is raised - - 21

VI. Sir Oliver du Guesclin is made Prisoner by the Garrison of Cherbourg - 25

VII. The French Garrison of Bersat is defeated.—The Town surrenders to the English.—The King of Navarre comes to Bourdeaux, to solicit Aid from the English - 28

Page

CHAP. VIII. The Infant of Castille besieges Pampeluna.—Sir Thomas Trivet, in conducting Succours to the King of Navarre, takes several Places in Gascony from the French - 32

IX. Sir Thomas Trivet with the English come to the Succour of the King of Navarre.—The Siege of Pampeluna is raised. - - 37

X. The English and Navarrois overrun the Kingdom of Spain.—The Events that befel them there - - 41

XI. Sir Thomas Trivet makes an Excursion to the Town of Alfaro in Castille.—Peace concluded between the Kings of Spain and Navarre.—The Death of Henry King of Spain.—His Son John is crowned as his Successor - - 45

XII. The Lord de Mucident turns to the English.—The Lord de Langurant is mortally wounded.—The Governor of Bouteville is defeated, and the Castle surrenders to the French 50

XIII. Sir Thomas Trivet returns to England with his Companions.—His Herald relates to the Duke of Lancaster the Particulars of the Death of King Henry of Castille, and the Coronation of his eldest Son Don John - - - 56

Page

CHAP. XIV. The Earl of Flanders stops the Progress of an Ambassador from the King of France to Scotland: this causes great Dissentions between them - - - 60

XV. The Duke of Brittany retires from Flanders to England.—The young Count de St. Pol, while a Prisoner in England, marries - - - 68

XVI. The duke of Anjou makes War on Brittany.—Sir William des Bordes is taken Prisoner by the Garrison of Cherbourg - - - 71

XVII. Geoffry Tete-Noir and Aimerigot Marcel, Captains attached to England, take several strong Places in Auvergne and Limousin from the French - - - 75

XVIII. A Schism in the Church.—The Cause of it.—The Bretons make War on the Romans.—The Queen of Naples gives up her Territories to Pope Clement VII. - - 79

XIX. Pope Clement goes to Avignon.—He makes the Duke of Anjou magnificent Presents.—Sir Silvester Budes and his Companions are beheaded - 90

XX. The State of Flanders before the War.—The Causes of the Disputes between the Earl of Flanders and the Flemings.—John Lyon introduces the Distinction of White Hoods - 95

Page

CHAP. XXI. By the Exhortations of John Lyon, the Inhabitants of Ghent send some of their principal Citizens to the Earl of Flanders, to demand the Preservation of their Liberties and Franchises.—The Earl requests these Citizens to abolish the White Hoods - - - 106

XXII. The White Hoods murder the Bailiff of Ghent in the Midst of the Market.—The Houses and Goods of the Family of the Matthews are destroyed.—A grand Confusion in Ghent - - - 114

XXIII. Twelve Citizens of Ghent are deputed to the Earl of Flanders.—The White Hoods pillage and burn the Castle of Andreghien, of which the Earl was very fond - 119

XXIV. The Death of John Lyon.—The Men of Ghent choose Captains to command them.—Several Towns in Flanders ally themselves with Ghent - - - 126

XXV. The Men of Ghent besiege the Town of Oudenarde on all Sides.—They make a grand Assault on the Earl of Flanders in Dendremonde - 133

XXVI. Several Assaults are made on Oudenarde.—Peace concluded between the Flemings and the Earl of Flanders, by Means of the Duke of Burgundy - - - 139

Page

CHAP. XXVII. The Duke of Brittany returns from England, at the Entreaty of his Subjects.—The English are desirous of marrying their young King.—The Knights of England sent to the Aid of the Duke of Brittany meet with great Tempests at Sea - 145

XXVIII. The Town of Ghent sends Ambassadors to the Earl of Flanders, to entreat him to come thither - - - 152

XXIX. The Earl of Flanders enters the Town of Ghent, and secretly departs from it.—The Walls of Oudenarde are razed by the White Hoods, their Allies and Accomplices - - 156

XXX. The Men of Ghent surrender Oudenarde.—They destroy the Houses of the Nobles.—A cruel and pitiless War renewed between the Men of Ghent and the Nobility - - 165

XXXI. The Nobles make War on the Flemings - - 171

XXXII. The Death of Sir Bertrand du Guesclin, Constable of France 175

XXXIII. The duke of Brittany requests Succour from the King of England.—The Earl of Buckingham, youngest Son to the late King, is appointed Commander of the Expedition - 177

CHAP.

Page

CHAP. XXXIV. The Earl of Buckingham marches with his Army from Calais - 182

XXXV. The Lord de Brimeu, his Sons and his Men are taken Prisoners by the English.—The Garrison of Peronne are driven back into that Town - - - 191

XXXVI. The English burn and despoil Champagne.—They meet with various Adventures on their March, and make many Prisoners - - - 194

XXXVII. The English come before Troyes.—A Skirmish at one of the Gates.—They take a Fort which the Duke of Burgundy had erected on the Outside.—King Charles practises with the Inhabitants of Nantes - - 200

XXXVIII. The English overrun the Countries of Gatinois and Beauce.—A French Squire demands to tilt with an English Squire: they both behave very gallantly - 210

XXXIX. King Charles of France is taken ill.—His last Words on his Death-bed - - 216

XL. The Lord de Hangest is near taken by the English.—The Lord de Mauvoisin remains their Prisoner.—The English cross the River Sarte in Disorder - 221

XLI. The Death of Charles the Fifth, King of France - - 224

CHAP.

Page

CHAP. XLII. The English arrive in Brittany.—The Duke excuses himself for having so long delayed coming to meet them.—They undertake together the Siege of Nantes - 226

XLIII. The Coronation of King Charles VI. of France - - - 235

Two additional Chapters, which are only in one of my MSS. and not in any printed Copy - 239, 240

XLIV. The Earl of Buckingham besieges Nantes.—Sallies are made by the Garrison - - - 243

XLV. The Duke of Brittany explains his Reasons for not coming to the Siege of Nantes.—The Garrison continue most valiantly to make Sallies - - - 247

XLVI. The English break up the Siege of Nantes.—The Duke of Brittany sends handsome Excuses to the Earl of Buckingham - 254

XLVII. Tilts and Tournaments are performed before the Earl of Buckingham between certain French and English Knights - - 263

XLVIII. The Duke of Brittany makes his Peace with the King of France.—The English return Home.—A Combat between an English and a French Squire - - 272

Page

CHAP. XLIX. The War recommences between the Earl of Flanders and the Inhabitants of Ghent.—The Men of Ghent and of Ypres are discomfited by the Ambuscades of the Earl of Flanders - 283

L. The Towns of Ypres and Courtray turn to the Earl of Flanders.—Ghent is besieged - - 290

LI. The Earl of Flanders raises the Siege of Ghent.—He defeats a great Part of the Army of Ghent, through the Self-sufficiency of Rasse de Harzelle, near to Nevele - - - 296

LII. Peter du Bois with the Remainder of his Army retire to Ghent.—After having been in danger of his Life, he besieges Courtray - 305

LIII. Arnoul le Clerc, Captain of some Troops of White Hoods, defeats several of the Earl of Flanders' Nobility.—He himself is afterwards defeated and slain - 311

LIV. During this War, the rich Citizens of Ghent are subjugated by their Soldiers.—Philip Von Artaveld is made Governor of Ghent - 315

LV. A War between the Kings of Castille and Portugal - 323

LVI. The Earl of Cambridge sails for Portugal.—The Duke of Lancaster goes to the Borders of Scotland, to make a Truce with the Scots - - - 329

CHAP.

Page

CHAP. LVII. The Populace of England rebel against the Nobility - - 332

LVIII. The Populace of England commit many Cruelties on those in official Situations. —They send a Knight as Ambassador to the King 338

LIX. The Commonalty of England enter London, where they commit many Cruelties and Outrages. — They put to death the Archbishop of Canterbury and several others - 345

LX. The Nobles of England are in great Danger of being destroyed. — Three of the principal Leaders of the Rebles are punished, and the rest sent back to their Homes 352

LXI. A Truce between the English and Scots.—The Duke of Lancaster remains in Scotland during the Rebellion in England - - 366

LXII. King Richard journeys through England from Town to Town, punishing those who had been Principals or active in the late Rebellion.—The Duke of Lancaster returns from Scotland to England - - - 371

Additions, from a MS. in the Hafod Library - 375

Page

CHAP. LXIII. The Duke of Lancaster conceives Anger against the Earl of Northumberland, for the Refusal of Admittance into Berwick - 377

LXIV. The Earl of Cambridge and his Army arrive at Lisbon - 380

THE

CHRONICLES

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN, &c.

CHAP. I.

THE ENGLISH, AT THIS PERIOD, MAKE EXCURSIONS INTO VARIOUS PARTS OF THE KINGDOM OF FRANCE.—THE MELANCHOLY DEATH OF EVAN OF WALES.

SIR John Arundel, who had remained at Southampton with his two hundred men at arms and four hundred archers, received information from ſome priſoners who had been taken in a Norman veſſel, that the duke of Lancaſter had well ſcoured the ports of Normandy, ſo that none of the French dared to put to ſea. He directly ordered his veſſels and four large ſhips to be got ready, laden with proviſions, in which he embarked, and made ſail for Cherbourg, where he was joyfully received. The caſtle remained under the guard of the Engliſh, on the departure of the Navarrois; but ſir Peter de Baſle, the governor, did not leave it.

I muſt inform you, that Cherbourg is only to be conquered by famine; for it is one of the ſtrongeſt caſtles in the world: the garriſon made many profitable excurſions on thoſe of Valognes.

Sir John Arundel, after he had garriſoned Cherbourg with Engliſh, remained there but fifteen days to re-victual it, and returned to Southampton, of which he was governor.

We will now ſpeak of the ſiege of St. Malo. When the Engliſh entered the harbour, they found therein a number of veſſels from la Rochelle, laden with good wines; the merchants were ſoon eaſed of them, and their veſſels burnt. The ſiege of St. Malo was directly commenced, for they were in ſufficient numbers to undertake it: they overran the country, and did much damage. Thoſe who were moſt active in this buſineſs were ſir Robert Knolles, and Sir Hugh Broc his nephew, who were well acquainted with thoſe parts.

Theſe two made excurſions daily, and the canon de Robeſart in company with them. Some days they loſt, and at others gained: they, however, burnt and deſtroyed all round St. Malo.

The army of the duke of Lancaſter had plenty of proviſion, for they had brought with them large quantities from England. Many ſevere aſſaults were made on St. Malo, and the attacks as ably reſiſted, for there were ſeveral men at arms within it not eaſily to be conquered.

The lords of the army cauſed the carpenters to make ſheds, under which they could with greater eaſe carry on their attacks; they had four hundred cannons pointed againſt the different parts of the town, which very much haraſſed its inhabitants.

Among the various aſſaults, there was one which

was

was particularly ſevere, for it laſted a whole day, and many Engliſh were killed and wounded: thoſe within made ſo prudent a defence as not to loſe a man: a knight from England, called ſir Peter l'Eſcume, was ſlain, for whoſe death the duke and the earl were ſorely vexed.

We will now return for a while to the ſiege of Mortain ſur mer in Poitou, and to Evan of Wales.

Evan of Wales had cloſely blockaded Mortain in Poitou, of which place the ſouldich de l'Eſtrade was governor, and had erected four block-houſes: the firſt was built on the edge of a rock before the caſtle, on the Garonne, and Evan had poſted himſelf within it: the ſecond was built between the water and the lower caſtle, oppoſite to a poſtern gate, from which none could iſſue without the certainty of being taken: the third was on the oppoſite ſide of the caſtle: the fourth was the church of St. Leger, near half a league from the fort.

The inhabitants of Mortain were long ſorely haraſſed by theſe means, for the blockade laſted upwards of a year and a half, in which time they were hardly puſhed for proviſion and other neceſſaries, having neither ſtockings nor ſhoes to their feet; but what was the moſt grievous, they did not ſee any appearance of ſuccour being ſent to them.

During the time of this ſiege, there came out of England, and from the borders of Wales, a Welſh ſquire named John Lambe, who was ſcarcely a gentleman; and indeed he ſhewed it, for no gentleman would ever have practiſed ſuch baſe

wickedneſs. It was ſaid, that on his departure from England, he had been inſtigated by ſome Engliſh knights to perform the treaſon he did; for Evan of Wales was greatly hated in England and Gaſcony, on account of the captal de Buch, whom he had made priſoner before Soubiſe in Poitou, and whoſe ranſom could never be obtained either by the exchange of the count de St. Pol or by any other, nor for any ſum of money that could be offered: this cauſed his death, through melancholy, in the Temple at Paris, to the very great regret of all his friends.

About this time John Lambe arrived in Brittany, and continued his journey until he came to Poitou: he was honourably received every where, by calling himſelf one of Evan's friends and ſpeaking very good French. He ſaid he was come from Wales to viſit Evan, and was too lightly believed. For theſe reaſons, he was eſcorted by the men of Poitou to Mortain, where the ſiege was going forward.

John Lambe advanced towards Evan, when, falling on his knees, he ſaid in his country language, that he had left Wales to ſee and ſerve him. Evan, not harbouring the leaſt ſuſpicion, received him kindly, thanked him for coming, and accepted his offers of ſervice: he then aſked the news from Wales. He told him enough of true and falſe, and made him believe that the whole principality was deſirous of having him for their lord. This information gained ſo much the love of Evan (for every

every one naturally would wiſh to return to his own country) that he immediately appointed him his chamberlain. John won daily on the affection of Evan: there was no one in whom he had ſo great a confidence. Evan's regard increaſed ſo faſt that evil befel him, for which it was great pity, for he was a valiant knight, a good man, and the ſon of a prince of Wales whom king Edward had cauſed to be beheaded, but on what account I am ignorant.

The king of England had ſeized his lands in Wales; and this Evan, in his infancy having come to France, explained his ſituation to king Philip, who willingly liſtened to him, retained him near his perſon, and as long as he lived he was one of the pages of his chamber with his nephews d'Alençons and ſeveral other young nobles. He was alſo retained by king John, under whom he bore arms, and was at the battle of Poitiers, but fortunately eſcaped, otherwiſe death would ſoon have followed his captivity.

On the peace between France and England, he went to Lombardy, where he continued to bear arms; and, on the renewal of the war, he returned to France, and conducted himſelf ſo well that he was much praiſed and loved by the king of France, and by all the great lords.

I will now tell his end, which I ſhall do unwillingly; but it is neceſſary to ſhew to poſterity what became of him.

Evan of Wales had a cuſtom during the ſiege

of Mortain, as ſoon as he was riſen, if it were a fine morning, to ſeat himſelf before the caſtle, when he had his hair combed and plaited for a conſiderable length of time, during which he viewed the caſtle, and the ſurrounding country, for he had not the ſmalleſt dread from any quarter: it was not uſual for any one to attend him as a guard but this John Lambe. Very often it happened that he there completely dreſſed himſelf; and, if any one had buſineſs with him, they went there to ſeek him.

On his laſt viſit it was early morn and fine clear weather, and the heat of the night had prevented him from ſleeping: he went thither all unbuttoned, with only his jacket and ſhirt, and his cloak thrown over him, when he ſeated himſelf as uſual, attended by John Lambe. All the others were aſleep, and no guard was kept, for he conſidered the caſtle of Mortain as conquered. After Evan had ſeated himſelf on the trunk of a tree, he ſaid to John Lambe, 'Go and ſeek my comb, for that will refreſh me a little.' He anſwered, 'Willingly, my lord.' On his way to ſeek for the comb, or when returning with it, the devil muſt have entered the body of this John; for with the comb he brought a ſhort Spaniſh dagger that had a broad point, to accompliſh his evil intentions: he ſtruck this dagger into Evan, whoſe body was almoſt naked, and pierced him through, ſo that he fell down dead.

After he had performed this deed, he left the dagger in the body, ſet off, and went ſlowly to the barriers

barriers of the caſtle, wherein he was received by the guards, to whom he made himſelf known, and was conducted to the ſouldich de l'Eſtrade. 'My lord,' ſaid he to the ſouldich, 'I have delivered you from one of the greateſt enemies you ever had.' 'From whom?' replied the ſouldich. 'From Evan of Wales,' anſwered John. 'By what means?' demanded the ſouldich. 'By ſuch means,' ſaid John, and then related to him the circumſtances you have juſt heard. When the ſouldich heard this, he ſhook his head, and, eying him with anger, replied; 'Thou haſt murdered him; but know from me, that if we did not reap much advantage from thy wicked deed, I would have thy head cut off: what is done, however, cannot be undone; but ſuch a death is unworthy of a gentleman, and we ſhall have more blame than praiſe for it.'*

Thus

---

* It would appear, however, from the following extract from the Fœdera, under the year 1381, of payments made on account of the war in Aquitaine, that John Lambe was ſent on purpoſe to murder Evan: at leaſt, he is recompenſed for it;

'Item paie le xviii. jour de Septembre, à Johan Lambe & à ſes deux compagnions, en recompenſacion & regarde, ſi bien de les, bons & agréables ſervices qu' il a fait à monſieur le prince, que Dieu aſſoile, & fera au roi q'ôre eſt, come de la mourt de Yon de Galles, - C francs.'

After all the enquiries I have been able to make, I have not ſucceeded in identifying Evan of Wales with any known character in the old Welſh books. In the works of David Nanmor, who flouriſhed from about 1430 to 1470, there is a paſſage,

Thus was Evan of Wales killed by a wicked and treaſonable act, to the great grief of the army and all manner of people. King Charles of France particularly lamented his loſs, but he could not help it.

Evan of Wales was buried in the church of St. Leger, which he had converted into a fort, half a league diſtant from the caſtle of Mortain, and all the gentlemen of the army attended his obſequies, which were very grandly performed.

The ſiege of Mortain was not, however, diſcontinued for this loſs. There were very good knights from Brittany, Poitou and France, who had reſolved never to quit it unleſs forced by ſuperior numbers; and they were more eager than before to conquer the caſtle, by way of revenge for the death of Evan. They remained in the ſame poſition, without making any aſſaults, for they knew the garriſon were exceedingly ſtraightened for proviſion, and that none could enter the place.

We will leave this ſiege for a ſhort time, and re-

---

where the poet, in looking for more happy times than his own in futurity, among other predictions announces the coming of Ievan Dyvi, or Evan of Dovy. Now this Evan of Dovy muſt have been ſome perſon of celebrity, at ſome period prior to the time of the writer before mentioned, whoſe fame is totally obſcured, probably owing to the danger of eſpouſing the cauſe of that perſonage, from his being hoſtile to the exiſting government. This ſeems to be the only reaſon for the ambiguity of the poet, and it ſeems alſo ſatisfactorily to account for the ſilence of all the Welſh writers reſpecting Evan of Wales.

turn to that of St. Malo; but we will firſt mention how thoſe who had beſieged Evreux perſevered in it.

CHAP. II.

THE INHABITANTS OF EVREUX SURRENDER TO THE FRENCH.—THE TWO ARMIES ASSEMBLE BEFORE ST. MALO.

THE ſiege of Evreux being formed by the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere, they had frequent communication with the king of France, who had fixed his reſidence at Rouen to be as near his army as poſſible. He was deſirous they ſhould gain Evreux, either by ſtorm or capitulation, as ſoon as might be, for he knew the Engliſh were in great force in Brittany: he ordered, therefore, all his troops to advance thither to raiſe the ſiege of St. Malo, and to combat the Engliſh.

Theſe two lords acquitted themſelves loyally and valiantly, for every day there were aſſaults as well as negotiations going forward. They ſent to remonſtrate with the inhabitants on their folly in thus having war made upon them with the riſk of loſing their fortunes and having their houſes razed to the ground; for they had their lawful lord with them, the lord Charles de Navarre, to whom, by right of ſucceſſion from his mother, the county of Evreux had devolved. They adviſed them, therefore,

fore, not to attend to the erroneous opinions of that madman Ferrando of Navarre, who was there only to ruin them; for they muſt well know that the goodneſs of their cauſe would never allow them to march from thence without having conquered it; and, ſhould it be taken by ſtorm, every one would be put to the ſword, and the town re-peopled with new inhabitants. Such were the offers, ſpeeches and menaces to the townſmen of Evreux; but theſe did not prevent daily aſſaults from being made.

The inhabitants at laſt began to waver, on ſeeing that no ſuccour was likely to be ſent them; and they ſaid to each other, 'We ſee that the king of France does not claim the territory for himſelf, but for his nephew.' They therefore entered into a treaty with the lord de Coucy. When Ferrando perceived this, he ſhut himſelf up in the caſtle, and would not be preſent at any of the meetings. In ſhort, they ſurrendered on their lives and fortunes being ſpared, whether they were in town or country, and acknowledged the lord Charles for their lord. They then beſieged Ferrando in the caſtle, who negotiated with the lords of France, and offered to ſurrender the caſtle if they would permit him and his men freely to depart. His offer was accepted. Shortly after, they packed up their baggage, and marched out of Evreux, under the conduct of the lords de Coucy, de la Riviere, and ſir John le Mercier, taking the road to Cherbourg.

After the conqueſt of Evreux, all the leaders of the

the French army went to Rouen, where the king reſided, in order to conſider what was next for them to do; for they had heard that the Engliſh were beſieging St. Malo. The king of France received them very graciouſly; in particuiar, the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere; for having ſo well ſucceeded in their exploits. All the men at arms remained in Normandy: not one of their captains were diſmiſſed, but were regularly paid their allowances.

The king of France, during his reſidence at Rouen, had heard of the Engliſh having laid ſiege to St. Malo with a powerful army, and that the inhabitants were hard preſſed by their daily aſſaults. He was unwilling to loſe his ſubjects, as well as the town; for if St. Malo were taken, Brittany would be very much weakened in that part. The king had therefore, to this purpoſe, iſſued a ſpecial ſummons for aſſembling troops, in order to aſſiſt them againſt the Engliſh, which no one dared to diſobey. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy, the count d'Alençon, the count de la Marche, the dauphin d'Auvergne, the count de Guines, ſir John de Boulogne, and great numbers of barons and knights of all ſorts, marched thither with numerous forces. The king ſent orders to his conſtable, ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, to ſee that none abſented themſelves from this aſſembly.

Tha conſtable obeyed, and came with all the men at arms of Anjou, Poitou and Touraine. The marſhal

marſhal de Blainville and the marſhal de Sancerre, the two marſhals of France, were alſo there.

From other parts came ſir Olivier de Cliſſon, the lord de Léon, with the knights and barons of Brittany: there were ten thouſand men at arms at leaſt, and in the plains one hundred thouſand horſes*.

Theſe men at arms took up their quarters as near to each other as they could; but there were between them and the Engliſh an arm of the ſea and a river. When the ſea ebbed, ſome young knights uſually adventured on the ſands, and performed ſeveral gallant deeds. Never was there ſeen ſo numerous an aſſembly of knighthood in Brittany. If the French were in great force, the Engliſh were very powerful, and each party thought there muſt be a combat, for every day there was an appearance of it from the banners and pennons fluttering in the wind. The Engliſh frequently drew out their army in battle-array, to examine the force of the French and the ſtrength of the banners and pennons, which were there in very great abundance. It was a great pleaſure to ſee them thus drawn out in a line of battle, and advance towards the river, to ſhew that they were ready to engage. The Engliſh ſaid, 'Let us look at our enemies, who will ſoon, at low water, croſs over and fight with

* Denys Sauvage doubts if this number of horſes be not too great.

us.' But they had no ſuch inclination, and were afraid of trying the chance; for their leaders would not allow them to advance to the combat.

During theſe frequent diſplays on each ſide, the earl of Cambridge, being fatigued with their inutility, declared with an oath, that if he ſaw them continued without any further advance made towards a battle, he would engage the French himſelf, whatever might be the conſequence.

The van-guard, compoſed of numbers of able men under the command of the conſtable, who well knew the hot and impatient temper of the Engliſh, were ordered to draw up their battalions on foot, on the ſands as near to the river as poſſible. The earl of Cambridge, who ſaw this manœuvre, cried out, 'Let them who love me follow me, for I am going to engage!' He then daſhed into the river, which was low, but the tide was returning, and he began to croſs it with his banner: the Engliſh commenced ſhooting at the French, when the conſtable ordered his men to retreat to the fields, in hopes the Engliſh would have croſſed; for very willingly would he have ſeen them do ſo, and have had them on the other ſide of the water.

The duke of Lancaſter was prepared, with a very ſtrong battalion, to follow his brother, ſhould there have been occaſion. He ſaid to Gerard de Brees, a ſquire from Hainault who was near him; 'Gerard, ſee how my brother ventures: he ſhews the French by his example his willingneſs for the combat, but they have no ſuch inclination.'

Thus

Thus was this buſineſs carried on, without any deeds of arms being performed worth mentioning; the French keeping on one ſide the water, the Engliſh on the other. The flood beginning to increaſe, the Engliſh retreated out of the river, and returned to their quarters: the French followed their example.

Whilſt theſe appearances of a battle were carried on, the ſiege of St. Malo was continued, and ſeveral feats of arms were done. The French guarded the banks ſo well, that the Engliſh were afraid to croſs the water.

It frequently happened that ſeveral knights or ſquires of Brittany, well acquainted with the country, forded the river, and in their excurſions met the Engliſh foragers, with whom they engaged; and ſucceſs, as is uſual in ſuch caſes, was ſometimes on one ſide, ſometimes on the other.

The lords of England reſolved to employ a mine, to gain entrance into St. Malo; for otherwiſe they thought they could not win it, as it was well provided with men at arms, who carefully defended it, as well as with all ſorts of ſtores and artillery. The Engliſh were obliged to be continually armed, and to keep in a body ready for battle, ſhould the French advance; and for this reaſon, they had not leiſure to aſſault the town, except by their cannon, of which they had plenty, that greatly annoyed it. Having fixed on a ſpot, they ſet their miners to work.

We will now leave for a while the ſiege of St. Malo, and return to that of Mortain in Poitou.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

THE ENGLISH RAISE THE SIEGE OF MORTAIN.

YOU have before heard related the death of Evan of Wales, how he was murdered, and how the Bretons and Poitevins were before Mortain, under the command of ſir James de Montmort, ſir Perceval d'Ayneval, ſir William de Montcontour and ſir James de Surgeres, who would not break up the ſiege, for they were much enraged at the death of Evan of Wales their commander, and wiſhed to revenge themſelves on the garriſon for it.

You have alſo heard how ſir Thomas Trivet, ſir William Scrope, ſir Thomas Breton, ſir William Cendrine, with a large body of men at arms and archers, had been ordered to the country near Bourdeaux, and to aſſiſt thoſe in Mortain, with ſir Matthew Gournay, who reſided in Bayonne, and who daily found employment there againſt the Gaſcons and barons poſſeſſing fortreſſes in thoſe parts.

Theſe four knights had remained with their men upwards of ſeven months at Plymouth, waiting a favourable wind to carry them to Gaſcony, which though it vexed them much, they could not help themſelves.

You have heard likewiſe that the lord Neville of Raby had been ordered with a body of men at

arms

arms and archers to the aſſiſtance of the king of Navarre, with the appointment of ſénéſchal of Bourdeaux. All theſe knights met at Plymouth, which was very agreeable to every one of them. On the arrival of Lord Neville, they had a wind to their wiſh, and, having embarked on board the veſſels that had been long laden, they ſet their ſails, and ſteered for Gaſcony. This fleet conſiſted of ſix ſcore veſſels and forty barges, having on board about a thouſand men at arms and two thouſand archers. They had favourable weather, which carried them into the port of Bourdeaux, the night of Our Lady, in September, in the year of grace 1378.

When the Bretons and Poitevins who were before Mortain ſaw this great fleet paſs by, with trumpets ſounding and every ſign of joy, they were much caſt down; while, on the contrary, the garriſon were rejoiced, for they juſtly imagined they ſhould very ſoon be relieved, or that there would be a battle, as they thought they never would have come ſo far to remain idle.

Sir James de Montmort and the other leaders of the army aſſembled in council, and debated for ſome time in what manner they ſhould act; they repented they had neglected to accept the offers of negotiating; for the ſouldich de l'Eſtrade had, a ſhort time before, propoſed a parley, and offered to ſurrender the caſtle, on the garriſon being allowed to march in ſafety to Bourdeaux; but the French would not liſten to it. However, they now ſent a herald to ſay, they would accept of their terms:

terms: but the ſouldich replied, he would have nothing to ſay to them; that he did not want to capitulate, for that the reinforcements he looked for were arrived; and that they might remain or march away as ſhould pleaſe themſelves.

Things remained thus, when the lord Neville and the Engliſh arrived at Bourdeaux, where they were magnificently received by ſir William Helmen ſénéſchal des Landes, ſir John de Multon mayor of Bourdeaux, the archbiſhop, the ladies and citizens.

Soon after his arrival, he iſſued a ſummons to the knights and ſquires of Gaſcony attached to England, and collected ſo many veſſels that four thouſand embarked on board of them, and ſailed down the river Garonne, to raiſe the ſiege of Mortain. News was ſoon carried to the French army, that the Engliſh and Gaſcons were coming down the river in great force to raiſe the ſiege: upon this, the leaders called another council, wherein it was reſolved, that as they were not ſufficiently ſtrong to wait for their enemies, it was better to give up their loſt time than to run a greater danger; having ordered their trumpets to ſound, they marched away without doing any thing more, and retreated into Poitou. All, however, did not march off, for a company of Bretons and Welſh, who had been attached to Evan of Wales, retired into the blockhouſe of St. Leger, which they ſaid would hold out againſt every force, and dragged all their artillery in with them.

The Engliſh and Gaſcon knights, who came full

ſail down the river Garonne, caſt anchor in its mouth before Mortain; when they diſembarked leiſurely, and as they landed drew up in order of battle to attack the fort of St. Leger, into which the Bretons and Welſh had retired.

Immediately a ſharp attack commenced. Whilſt this aſſault was going on, the lord Neville ſent a herald to the caſtle to ſpeak with the ſouldich, and to enquire how he was. The herald performed his meſſage, and reported that they were in good health, but ſo naked they had not a ſhoe to their feet nor a coat to their backs.

The attack on St. Leger laſted three hours; and the aſſailants gained nothing, but had ſeveral wounded. The barons then encamped, with the intent of not departing thence before they had conquered it, and were much vexed that the lord de Montmort and the other lords were not ſhut up in this fort: thoſe lords had very wiſely marched off, and had left the Bretons.

CHAP. IV.

THE ENGLISH RECOVER SEVERAL STRONG CASTLES FROM THE FRENCH IN THE BOURDELOIS.

THE lord Neville and the Engliſh knights, on the morrow, gave orders for the aſſault being renewed: the trumpets ſounded for the attack, and each

each company advanced to the fort St. Leger, when it began marvellouſly fierce.

That fort is ſituated on a rock which cannot eaſily be approached, and the weakeſt ſide is defended by wide ditches. The aſſailants laboured hard, but got nothing except many killed and wounded. The attack ceaſed; when they thought it moſt adviſable to fill up the ditches as well as they could, that they might gain more advantage in their next aſſault.

Having filled up the ditches with much difficulty, the Bretons who were within the fort began to be more alarmed than before, and not without reaſon; ſo they entered into a treaty. The lords from England, being as anxious to aſſiſt the king of Navarre as to recover ſeveral places which the Bretons held in the Bourdelois, readily liſtened to their propoſals. The fort of St. Leger was ſurrendered, on condition that the garriſon ſhould depart without danger to themſelves or fortunes, and be conducted whither they choſe to go. Thus was the fort of St. Leger won by the Engliſh; when the principal lords went into Mortain, and found there the ſouldich de l'Eſtrade and his party in the manner the herald had deſcribed them.

He was immediately accommodated ſuitably to his rank, and the caſtle re-victualled and reinforced with freſh troops. They then returned by the river Garonne to Bourdeaux the ſame way they had come.

When theſe knights were recruiting themſelves in Bourdeaux, they learnt that a baron held a fort

called St. Maubert, ſix leagues diſtant, in Medoc, from whence he much haraſſed the country. They embarked on the Garonne great proviſion of ſtores and artillery, and, having mounted thier horſes, marched by land to St. Maubert, with about three hundred ſpears. The Gaſcons who accompanied lord Neville in this expedition were, ſir Archibald de Greilly, the lords de Rouſſy, de Duras and de Tournon, On the arrival of theſe barons with their forces before St. Maubert, they encamped, and ſoon after began an aſſault, which at the onſet was very ſevere; for the Bretons who were in St. Maubert were men of courage, and had for their captain a perſon called Huguelin, round whom they rallied, and by whoſe advice they acted with vigour.

Theſe firſt attacks did no harm to the Bretons; when the Engliſh retired to their quarters, and on the morrow erected their engines to caſt ſtones, in order to break through the roof of the tower in which they reſided.

On the third day they ordered an aſſault, and ſaid ſuch a ruffianly crew could not hold out much longer. This attack was ſharp, and many were ſlain; for never did men defend themſelves better than theſe Bretons: however, ſeeing that no aſſiſtance was likely to come to them, they entered into a treaty; for they found they would never be left in quiet until they were conquered.

Treaties were concluded between them and the lords of the army, that they ſhould ſurrender St. Maubert, and march out without any damage to themſelves or fortunes, and ſhould retire into Poitou,

Poitou, or wherever they choſe, and be conducted thither.

When lord Neville had gained St. Maubert, he had it repaired, re-victualled, and provided with artillery: he placed therein Gaſcons to guard it, and appointed a ſquire from Gaſcony, called Peter de Preſias, governor, and then returned to Bourdeaux.

The Engliſh at Bourdeaux received daily information that Pampeluna in Navarre was beſieged, under the conduct of the infant of Caſtille; but they neither heard from the king of Navarre nor that king from them, which very much diſpleaſed him.

We will now return to the affairs of Brittany and Normandy, and tell how the ſiege of St. Malo continued.

CHAP. V.

THE MINE WHICH THE ENGLISH HAD MADE AT ST. MALO FAILS: IN CONSEQUENCE, THE SIEGE IS RAISED.

THERE were many grand attacks made by the Engliſh on St. Malo, during the ſiege; for they had full four hundred cannon, which fired day and night againſt the town and caſtle.

The governor, whoſe name was Morfonace, a valiant man at arms, was reſolved to defend it well, aided by the councils of ſir Hervé de Malatrait, the

lord de Combor and the viſcount de la Belliere, and had ſo far ſucceeded that there was not as yet any apparent damage.

In the adjacent country, as I have before ſaid, was the flower of France, as well great lords as others; they amounted to ſixteen thouſand men at arms, knights and ſquires, with upwards of one hundred thouſand horſes. They were as willing for the combat as the Engliſh could be; but each of them fought to have an advantage: what, however, prevented this from happening ſeveral times was the large river, when the tide was in, between the two armies, which hindered them from attacking each other.

The mine was advancing, of which the inhabitants of St. Malo had ſome ſuſpicions. In ſuch large armies as theſe, it was not poſſible but that the foragers of each ſhould frequently have rencounters, in which fortune favoured ſometimes one party, and ſometimes the other; for there were very expert and youthful knights of each army who fought for ſuch exploits.

The miners of the duke of Lancaſter laboured hard at their work day and night, to carry it under the town and throw down part of the walls, ſo that the men at arms and archers might eaſily gain an entrance.

Morfonace and the knights in the town gueſſed what they were about, and knew well that if they ſhould ſucceed they were ruined. They did not fear their other aſſaults, for the town was well provided with all ſorts of ſtores and artillery for two years,

years, if neceſſary: wherefore they conſidered how they might beſt counteract this mine. After having long conſulted, they ſucceeded in their attempt: it was in ſome ſort accidental, for things fell out with extraordinary good fortune for them.

Richard earl of Arundel was on guard one night with his people, but he was very inattentive to obey the orders he had received, of which the garriſon were informed by their ſpies or otherwiſe. When they had fixed on an hour in which they imagined the army (truſting to lord Arundel's want of vigilance) would be faſt aſleep, they ſallied from the town very ſecretly, and advanced to where the miners were at work, who had little more to do to complete their mine.

Morfonace and his company, being prepared to accompliſh their enterprize, deſtroyed the mine at their eaſe; and ſome of the workmen who were within were never ſeen afterwards, as the mine fell upon them.

When they had finiſhed this buſineſs, they ſaid they would awaken the guard next the town, in order that they might know with what ſucceſs their gallantry had been crowned. They advanced to one of the wings of the army, ſhouting their war-cry, cutting down tents, and ſlaying all they met, ſo that the whole army was ſeriouſly alarmed. Morfonace and his companions retreated into St. Malo without any loſs; during which time the Engliſh armed themſelves, and advanced in front of the duke's diviſion, who was much aſtoniſhed at this event: he demanded how it could have happened,

when they informed him, that by the negligence of the guard, the mine had been deſtroyed, and they had ſuffered a great loſs.

Upon this, the earl of Arundel was ſent for and ſharply reprimanded by the duke of Lancaſter and earl of Cambridge for his neglect: he excuſed himſelf as well as he was able, but was ſo greatly aſhamed that he had rather have loſt ſeveral thouſand pounds.

After the deſtruction of the mine, the principal chiefs held a council to determine how they ſhould act. They ſaw they had loſt the ſeaſon of the year, which was not to be regained; for ſhould they attempt another mine, winter would come before it could be finiſhed: they therefore reſolved, taking all things into conſideration, that their wiſeſt plan would be to break up their camp and return to England.

Orders were, in conſequence, iſſued by the duke and the marſhals for the army to decamp, and embark on board their fleet in the port of St. Malo. This order was ſoon obeyed; and, having a favourable wind, they made ſail for Southampton, where they arrived. On diſembarking, they learnt that ſir John Arundel, the governor of Southampton, was gone to reinforce the garriſon of Cherbourg.

Thus was this army diſperſed, when ſome recroſſed the ſeas, and others returned to their own country. The common people in England began to murmur againſt the nobles, ſaying they had that year done little good in ſuffering St. Malo to eſcape from

from them: in particular, the earl of Arundel found no favour with them.

We will now leave the Engliſh, to ſpeak of the French and of Cherbourg.

CHAP. VI.

SIR OLIVER DU GUESCLIN IS MADE PRISONER BY THE GARRISON OF CHERBOURG.

SOON after the Engliſh had retreated from St. Malo, and the French had reinforced the town and caſtle, the conſtable of France reſolved to march and lay ſiege to Cherbourg; of which place ſir John Harleſtone was governor, who had with him many knights from England and Navarre.

The whole army, however, did not march thither; for the dukes of Berry, of Burgundy, of Bourbon, the count de la Marche, the dauphin of Auvergne, with other chiefs and great lords, ſent back their troops to their different countries. Several went to pay their reſpects to the king at Rouen, who very graciouſly received them. The Bretons and Normans advanced to Valognes, three leagues from Cherbourg, where they erected ſmall forts. They knew well that ſir John Arundel had reinforced the garriſon, and they ſuppoſed he was ſtill there.

Between Cherbourg and Valognes are large foreſts, even as far as Coutances. The garriſon of Cherbourg could ſally forth, and make excurſions

over

over the country as often as they pleaſed, for there were in theſe foreſts well hedged roads, which prevented them from being attacked, and Cherbourg is one of the ſtrongeſt caſtles.

The garriſon of Valognes were exceedingly vexed that they could not hurt the Engliſh, by haraſſing the country. Sir Oliver du Gueſclin, brother to the conſtable, imagined that if he could, by means of the foreſt, approach in a cunning way near to Cherbourg, to reconoitre it; particularly if he could any how beſiege it; or if at leaſt he could ſeize the town, which lies at ſome little diſtance from the caſtle, he would ſo ſtrongly fortify it that the garriſon could not quit or enter the caſtle without great loſs.

Sir Oliver determined to try this project; and taking with him about fifteen lances, and guides who were acquainted with the roads through the foreſt, he ſet out one morning from Valognes, continuing his march until he had paſſed through the foreſt oppoſite to Cherbourg. That ſame day ſir John Arundel had viſited the town to amuſe himſelf, and had brought with him a ſquire of Navarre, called John Coq, to ſhew him the town. He was there informed that the French were at hand reconnoitring the place. 'My lord,' ſaid John Coq, 'I have heard that ſir Oliver du Gueſclin, the conſtable's brother, has paſſed the wood, and is examining our caſtle: for God's ſake, let him be purſued. I think I can conduct you in ſuch manner that he muſt fall into our hands, ſo that we may conquer them all.' 'By my faith,' replied ſir John,

'I am

'I am very willing ſo to do.' Having armed themſelves ſecretly, they mounted their horſes, in number about one hundred lances, picked men, and ſet out from Cherbourg, entered the foreſt without the French knowing any thing of the matter, and rode on.

Sir Oliver, finding the place of ſuch ſtrength as to make it impoſſible to beſiege it, took the ſame road to Valognes by which he had come. He had not marched three leagues before ſir John Arundel and John Coq, with their companions, who had been very exactly conducted, charged them, ſhouting 'Our Lady for Arundel!' When ſir Oliver heard this cry, and ſaw them advancing, he wiſhed himſelf in Valognes: he therefore mounted a fleet courſer, in hopes of ſaving himſelf; for he found the parties were too unequal for a combat; and his people diſperſed themſelves in the foreſt. Too few kept together. John Coq, like to a valiant man at arms, purſued ſir Oliver ſo cloſely that at laſt he made him his priſoner: there were alſo ten or a dozen more taken; the remainder ſaved themſelves among the trees, and returned to Valognes as well as they could, and related to ſir William des Bordes how they had fallen into an ambuſcade, and that ſir Oliver, with the remainder of their companions, had been made priſoners.

The knights and ſquires at Valognes were greatly hurt at this, but help it they could not. Sir Oliver du Gueſclin was conducted by the garriſon to the caſtle of Cherbourg, where he was told his ranſom would be at leaſt ten thouſand francs. This capture

ture was great news for England; and the buſineſs continued thus for a conſiderable time. Sir Oliver du Gueſclin remained priſoner in Cherbourg, under the guard of John Coq who had taken him; but ſir John Arundel had all the profit: he ranſomed ſir Oliver and thoſe who had been captured with him, but not immediately.

When the garriſon of Cherbourg had been reinforced, ſir John Arundel returned to Southampton, of which place he was governor. There remained with ſir John Harleſtone in Cherbourg ſome Engliſh knights; ſuch as ſir John Copeland, ſir John Briole, ſir Thomas Pigourde, and ſeveral knights and ſquires; who ſo carefully guarded it that no damage was done.

We will now leave for a while Cherbourg, and ſpeak of lord Neville, the ſénéſchal of Bourdeaux, ſir Thomas Trivet, with others their companions, and ſhew how they proſpered.

CHAP. VII.

THE FRENCH GARRISON OF BERSAT * IS DEFEATED.—THE TOWN SURRENDERS TO THE ENGLISH.—THE KING OF NAVARRE COMES TO BOURDEAUX, TO SOLICIT AID FROM THE ENGLISH.

THE lord Neville, who reſided at Bourdeaux, had had good information that the infanta of

* Berſat, a ſmall town of Limouſin, dioceſe of Limoges.

Caſtille,

Caſtille, with a large army of Spaniards, was beſieging the good city of Pampeluna, and that the viſcount de Chaſtillon, the lord de l'Eſcut, Raimond de Rameren, with ſeveral others, were ſhut up in it; but he had no intelligence of the king of Navarre, nor where he kept himſelf, which very much aſtoniſhed him: he ſuppoſed, however, that he ſhould ſoon hear from him.

The inhabitants of Bourdeaux and the adjacent countries entreated him not to quit thoſe parts, nor to ſend away any of his men at arms, ſo long as the Bretons ſhould hold any forts near them: they informed him particularly how the garriſon of Berſat very much haraſſed the country of the Bourdelois. To the enquiries of the lord Neville, how many Bretons there might be in Berſat; they anſwered, there were full five hundred fighting men. Upon this, he called to him the ſénéſchal des Landes and ſir William Scrope, and ſaid to them; 'Take two or three hundred lances, with as many archers, and march to Berſat, and manage ſo as to free the country from that garriſon; when we will afterwards turn our thoughts to things of greater importance.'

Theſe two knights wiſhed nothing more than to obey the orders they had received; and, collecting their men, they croſſed the Garonne, and marched towards Berſat. The ſame day the Engliſh had left Bourdeaux, the garriſon of Berſat had made an excurſion, with about ſix ſcore lances: they had aſcended the river Garonne in hopes of meeting ſome boats, and were under the command

of

of a knight from Perigord, called ſir Bertrand Raimond, a good man at arms.

About a ſhort league from Berſat, the two parties of Engliſh and French came ſuddenly in ſight of each other. When ſir Bertrand ſaw that a combat was unavoidable, he was no way alarmed, but gave proper orders to his men, who were almoſt all Gaſcons, and drew them up in handſome array.

The Engliſh charged them with couched lances, ſpurring their horſes until they were in the midſt of them. On the firſt ſhock, many were unhorſed on each ſide, and ſeveral gallant deeds done. At laſt, however, the French Gaſcons could not maintain the fight; for there were too many againſt them, who were likewiſe choſen men. The party from the garriſon of Berſat were either ſlain or made priſoners; very few eſcaped. Sir Bertrand Raimond and ſir William Hemon were among thoſe taken. The Engliſh then rode on towards Berſat. When the garriſon found that their party had been defeated, they were thunderſtruck, and ſurrendered the place upon their lives being ſpared. Thus did Berſat become Engliſh; and the detachment returned to Bourdeaux.

At the ſame time the Engliſh returned to Bourdeaux (the night of All-ſaints, in the year 1378), the king of Navarre came alſo thither, without being expected. The Engliſh received him moſt honourably; and, after they had lodged him and his attendants commodiouſly, they aſked what news from his country and of the Spaniards, for they had received orders to make ſuch enquiries.

He

He fully anſwered their queſtions, by ſaying that the infant John of Caſtille had beſieged Pampeluna with a large army, and had much conſtrained thoſe who were within it. He therefore entreated them, in conformity to the orders they had from the king of England, to make themſelves ready to aſſiſt his people, and to raiſe the ſiege.

They Engliſh knights replied they were perfectly willing, and through no negligence on their part ſhould the ſiege fail to be raiſed; that they would prepare every thing ſpedily, but added, 'Sir, you will return to your country, and iſſue out a ſpecial ſummons to your people; for we will be with you on a fixed day, when we ſhall be altogether in greater force: beſides, your people know the country better than we do.'

The king of Navarre replied that they ſpoke well, and what they had propoſed ſhould be done. After this, he remained with the Engliſh but three days, when he took his leave, and left the city of Bourdeaux, returning home by ſea; for there were, in the neighbourhood of Bayonne and the city of Dax in Gaſcony, ſeveral fortreſſes in the hands of the Bretons. The king of Navarre ſafely arrived at the town of St. Jean, where he reſided.

CHAP. VIII.

THE INFANT OF CASTILLE BESIEGES PAMPELUNA.—SIR THOMAS TRIVET, IN CONDUCTING SUCCOURS TO THE KING OF NAVARRE, TAKES SEVERAL PLACES IN GASCONY FROM THE FRENCH.

DURING the time the king of Navarre was at Bourdeaux, and ſince his return to his own country, John of Caſtille, ſon of the king of Spain, with the conſtable of Caſtille, who was the chief of this war, and whoſe name was don Pedro de Manriquez, had beſieged the good city of Pampeluna with a large force.

With them were the count don Alphonſo, the count de Medina, the count de Manons, the count de Ribede, Peter Ferrand de Faleſque, Peter Gouſſart de Modeſque and ſeveral other barons and knights from Spain, with their troops.*

Theſe Spaniards, on their march towards Pampeluna, had taken and burnt the town of Lorwich and the city of Viana, on this ſide Logrono; and there was not a lord in Navarre who dared to

* Ferreras does not mention any ſiege of Pampeluna, but ſays the infant advanced to Gorriaz, near Pampeluna, and afterwards beſieged Viana; when, having taken it, he returned to Caſtille. He notices only the firſt of the Spaniards in the text.—Vol. v. pp. 458, 459.

ſhew

ſhew himſelf before them, but each remained ſhut up in his caſtle. The king of Navarre knew well all this, for he had continually meſſengers coming and going, but he could not do any thing without the aſſiſtance of the Engliſh.

Lord Neville*, who reſided at Bourdeaux, whither he had been ſent by the king of England and his council, was informed of all the treaties between the two kings, and that it was incumbent on him to fulfil them. Having conſidered this matter, he called to him ſir Thomas Trivet, a very valiant knight, and ſaid to him; 'Sir Thomas, you know that we have been ordered hither to guard the frontiers of this country, to drive out our enemies, and to aſſiſt the king of Navarre, who has been lately here, and told us how much he was in want of our help. You were preſent when I promiſed him aſſiſtance. This muſt be done, or we ſhall be blamed. Therefore, my dear friend and companion, I appoint you leader of the troops I ſhall ſend to this war, and now order you to march thither with five hundred lances and a thouſand archers. I ſhall remain where I am, being ſénéſchal of Bourdeaux, under the orders of the king of England; for I muſt pay attention to what paſſes here, as this whole country is not very ſecure againſt our enemies.'

'My lord,' replied ſir Thomas, 'you do me more honour than I deſerve: I will obey your orders, as in juſtice I ought to do, and will acquit

* Lord Neville of Raby.—DUGDALE.

myſelf in this buſineſs to the utmoſt of my power.' 'Of that, ſir Thomas,' anſwered lord Neville, 'I am perfectly aſſured.'

Sir Thomas Trivet made no long delay, but, having completed his preparations, ſet out from Bourdeaux with his complement of men at arms and archers, taking the road towards Dax in Gaſcony. There were with him William Condone, ſir Thomas Berton, ſir John Affulée, ſir Henry Paule, ſir William Croquet, ſir Louis Malin, ſir Thomas Fourqe and ſir Robert Haſton, all Gaſcons.

When this army was arrived at the city of Dax, they received intelligence that the king of Navarre was at St. Jean du Pied des Ports, there aſſembling his men at arms. This news was very pleaſing to them.

Sir Matthew Gournay*, uncle to ſir Thomas Trivet, was governor of Dax, who received his nephew and his companions very agreeably, and helped them to find out lodgings. Sir Thomas' intentions were to have continued his march without halting: but ſir Matthew Gournay ſaid to him, 'Fair nephew, ſince you have with you ſo large a force, let us free this country from the

* Sir Matthew Gournay was fourth and youngeſt ſon of Thomas, one of the murderers of Edward II. He was a ſoldier of fortune, an able and valiant man, and ſénéſchal des Landes (a ſandy tract between Bourdeaux and Bayonne). He died 26th September 1406, and is buried at Stoke under Hamden, county of Somerſet.—For further particulars, and his epitaph, ſee Gough's Sepulchral Monuments, vol. ii. p. 20.

Bretons

Bretons and French, who hold at leaſt a dozen fortreſſes between this place and Bayonne; otherwiſe you leave them in your rear, and they may do us much miſchief the enſuing winter. If you conſent, the country will thank you, and I entreat it of you.' 'By my faith,' replied ſir Thomas, 'I am very willing.'

Soon after this converſation, he ſet about the buſineſs, and, drawing out his forces in the plain, marched towards a fort called Montpin, which was in the poſſeſſion of the Bretons. A ſquire from the county of Foix, whoſe name was Taillardon, was governor of it.

On their arrival, the Engliſh began a very ſevere attack. The fort was ſtormed, and all in it put to the ſword except Taillardon, who was made priſoner. After having placed in the caſtle a new garriſon, they marched away, and came before another, called Carcilhat, which the Gaſcons held. They immediately commenced an aſſault, but not gaining it directly, they encamped. On the morrow, they renewed the attack with ſo much vigour that it was taken, and all within ſlain except the governor, who was from Lower Brittany, and called Yvonnet Apriſidly: he was given to the Engliſh as priſoner, and the caſtle burnt. They then marched towards another fort, called Beſenghen, of which a Gaſcon ſquire was governor, whoſe name was Roger de Morelac. The Engliſh were two days before they could win it, which was at laſt done by capitulation: the garriſon

marched out in ſurety, and each man returned to his home.

From this caſtle they came before Taſſegnon, which is ſituated three leagues from Bayonne, and laid ſiege to it. The Bayonnois were much rejoiced when they heard of this; and they were joined from that town by full five hundred men with lances and ſhields, bringing with them the largeſt of their warlike engines.

The garriſon of Taſſegnon having done ſo much harm to thoſe of Bayonne made them thus deſirous of their deſtruction; but they would never have ſucceeded had it not been for the judgment and advice of the Engliſh: yet with all their united force they were fifteen days before they gained it, which was done by capitulation, on the garriſon marching out in ſafety under paſſports from ſir Thomas Trivet, who had them eſcorted as far as Bregent, which belonged to the French. The Bayonnois bought the caſtle for three thouſand francs, and then razed it, carrying the ſtones to Bayonne; where the Engliſh were received with great joy, and had all things according to their wiſh by paying for them.

CHAP. IX.

SIR THOMAS TRIVET WITH THE ENGLISH COME TO THE SUCCOUR OF THE KING OF NAVARRE.—THE SIEGE OF PAMPELUNA IS RAISED.

THE king of Navarre, who reſided at St. Jean du Pied des Ports, was exceedingly angry that the Engliſh were ſo long coming, for his country was in great danger; and the city of Pampeluna would have been taken by the Spaniards, had it not been for the viſcount de Chaſtillon, the governor, who had under him in all but two hundred Gaſcon ſpears, but his prudence and watchfulneſs prevented it.

Sir Perducas d'Albret was governor of the town of Tudela in Navarre; the count Pullois and his brother Roger commanded in the city of Miranda: a knight from Catalonia, called ſir Raymond de Bageth, was governor of another ſtrong town in Navarre, named Arques*. The king of Navarre, placing his confidence in theſe captains, remained at St. Jean du Pied des Ports, and left them to act as they pleaſed. The whole country round Pampeluna was deſtroyed; for none dared to oppoſe the Spaniards, and they concluded they muſt by a long ſiege gain the town. However,

* Arques,—probably les Arcos.

thoſe within thought otherwiſe; for the viſcount de Chaſtillon, the lord de l'Eſcut and ſir William de Paux defended it ſo well that the Spaniards began to be tired: winter was approaching, it being about St. Andrew's day, and their proviſion was becoming ſcarce: for, if the viſcount de Roquebertin had not reinforced them with men at arms and ſixty horſe-loads of proviſion, they would have retreated at All-ſaints day.

The king of Navarre ſent one of his knights, called ſir Peter de Baſcle, to the Engliſh, to entreat them, if they wiſhed to ſerve him, to haſten their march; for they had too long delayed it, according to the promiſes they had made, and the need he had of them.

The knight rode until he came into the country of Bayonne, and found the Engliſh before a caſtle named Poulat, to whom he delivered his meſſage very punctually. Sir Thomas Trivet replied, that as ſoon as the caſtle he was now before was conquered, he would march for Navarre, and that the knight might return and depend on what he had ſaid.

Sir Peter went back, and two days afterwards the caſtle ſurrendered, on the garriſon marching out in ſafety. It was re-garriſoned, and afterwards the country continued tolerably quiet. There were ſome other ſmaller bodies, who had poſted themſelves in churches and monaſteries, that haraſſed the country; but they were in no great numbers. The Engliſh, therefore, declared they could no longer remain with them, but muſt march

to

to Navarre to raiſe the ſiege of Pampeluna and combat the Spaniards.

Sir Thomas Trivet, ſir Matthew Gournay, with their men, returned to Dax, where they halted four days: on the fifth, they departed, and took the road to Navarre. Sir Matthew Gournay marched back to the city of Bayonne with thoſe under his command, to defend the country, and to conquer ſome of the ſmall forts which the Bretons ſtill held.

Sir Thomas continued his march until he arrived at St. Jean du Pied des Ports, where he found the king of Navarre, who was right glad to ſee him. He lodged the knights in the town, and the men at arms found the beſt quarters they could in the country about. The king had, ſome time before, iſſued his ſummons for a large army to aſſemble before the city of Miranda: none dared to diſobey it, and all knights and ſquires had in conſequence prepared themſelves to march to Pampeluna againſt the Spaniards.

News arrived at the Spaniſh army, that the Engliſh with a powerful force were with the king of Navarre, at St. Jean, to the amount of twenty thouſand men at arms. Upon this, a council was held of the principal chiefs, to conſider whether to wait for the king of Navarre, or to retreat. This was long debated; for ſome of the captains wiſhed to wait for the Engliſh and Navarrois, while others were of a contrary opinion, ſaying they were not ſtrong enough to meet ſuch an army, and too much fatigued and worn down by the length of the ſiege.

This council ſat a conſiderable time: at laſt, orders were given to decamp, and make a handſome retreat into their own country. What inclined them moſt to this was, that ſome valiant knights who had great experience in war declared that their honour would not ſuffer any diſgrace, for that king Henry, being returned into Caſtille, had ſent, fifteen days before, orders of recal to his ſon, as well as for the diſcontinuance of the ſiege of Pampeluna.

The Spaniards, therefore, quitted their quarters, and when they marched off ſet fire to them, taking the road to Logrono and to St. Domingo in Caſtille. When the inhabitants of Pampeluna ſaw them march away, they were much rejoiced, for they had preſſed them hard.

News was brought to the king of Navarre and to the Engliſh at St. Jean of the Spaniards having raiſed the ſiege, and of their retreat to their own country. They ſeemed as if much enranged at it, for they would willingly have fought with them. Notwithſtanding this, they marched to Pampeluna, where they found the viſcount de Chaſtillon, the lord de l'Eſcut and the others, who received them with pleaſure.

When theſe men at arms had refreſhed themſelves for two or three days in Pampeluna, they thought it adviſable to march from thence and divide themſelves in different garriſons, to gain more country: beſides, the mountains of Navarre are too cold in the winter, being covered with ſnow. The Engliſh were, therefore, ordered to

Tudela;

Tudela; the lord de l'Eſcut to Pont à la Reine*; the count Pullois and his brother Roger to Corella, and the lord de Chaſtillon to Mundon. In this manner were the men at arms diſtributed, and the king of Navarre remained in his palace at Pampeluna. The garriſons in Navarre continued in peace without manifeſting any inclination to make excurſions during the winter: on which account, the Spaniards diſperſed, and king Henry went to reſide at Seville, accompanied by his queen and children.

CHAP. X.

THE ENGLISH AND NAVARROIS OVERRUN THE KINGDOM OF SPAIN.—THE EVENTS THAT BEFEL THEM THERE.

SIR Thomas Trivet and his companions were quartered in Tudela, and had not done any thing ſince their entrance into Navarre; but, hearing that the Spaniſh army was diſbanded, they determined to make an excurſion into Spain, to perform ſomething for their pay. They made preparations for a ſecret expedition, and ſent information of it to the count Pullois and his brother Roger, who came to Tudela with two hundred lances and three hundred ſhields: when they were

* Pont à la Reine,—Punte à la Reyna,—appears by the map to be in Arragon.

all

all muſtered, they might be about ſeven hundred ſpears, twelve hundred archers, and as many other foot ſoldiers. They loaded many horſes with all ſorts of proviſion, and, marching away, encamped, on Chriſtmas eve, in a fair meadow by a river ſide at the foot of the mountain Montcain*, which ſeperates the three kingdoms of Navarre, Caſtille and Arragon: on the other ſide of this mountain lies a country called Val di Soria. This day the weather was very fine, and wondrous hot.

When they had dined, the captains aſſembled in council to determine whether they ſhould remain there Chriſtmas day, or attempt ſome warlike exploit; for they were on the borders of the enemy's country. They reſolved to march that very night, ſo as to arrive at the city of Soria† by dawn on Chriſtmas day, and ſcale its walls.

This plan was adopted, and orders given in conſequence. Three hundred lances were only to be employed; the others with the foot were to remain where they then were until the morrow, to hear the ſucceſs of the enterprize. The count Pullois with one hundred lances, and ſir Thomas Trivet with his troops, having guides to conduct them, were to march in four diviſions and to form three ambuſcades, the more ſecretly to execute their enterprize and the more ſurely to ſucceed in it.

---

* Montcain,—probably, by the map, Moncaio: it ſeems near to Taraçona.

† Soria,—a town in Caſtille.

About

About two o'clock after midnight, they were armed and mounted, but without any trumpets. The captains and the guides made themſelves well acquainted with the different points of the country, that they might all arrive punctually at Soria at the ſame time. They had aſcended the mountain and advanced into the plains, when it began to ſnow and hail ſo marvellouſly faſt that the ground was all covered, and they rode on until the morrow without meeting each other. This misfortune of the Engliſh fell out luckily for the inhabitants of Val di Soria, as they had not taken any precautions againſt an attack; and, had they met according to the plan laid down, they muſt have taken the town by eſcalade, without a poſſibility of a diſappointment.

When ſir Thomas Trivet and the other captains ſaw that their attempt had failed, they were much vexed: they collected themſelves as well as they could, to take ſome refreſhment from their ſumpter horſes, and then to follow the right road to Soria, according to their original intentions.

As they had reſolved, ſo did they execute; and, after a ſhort breakfaſt, ſir Raymond de Balge, a Navarrois, was choſen to advance before the town with forty lances, in order to draw out the javelin men who were the guard of it.

The knight rode up to the barriers, where he ſkirmiſhed with the guard; for theſe javelin men were full two hundred: they ſallied forth inſtantly, and began a combat, when the others retreated by little and little to draw them further into the plain.

The

The garriſon would have very roughly treated this detachment, if their ambuſcade had not advanced to their aſſiſtance: they charged the guard full gallop, with ſpears in their reſts, ſo that at the firſt ſhock ſeveral were killed and wounded, and the reſt driven back into the town with great loſs. They immediately cloſed their gates and barriers, and mounted the battlements, for they expected an aſſault; but they were diſappointed, as the Engliſh and Navarrois retreated in the courſe of the day, and returned to their quarters, where they had left their men.

They remained there that night; and on the morrow, which was St. Stephen's day, they marched to a town called Quaſquan*, in Navarre, where they met the king of Navarre, who had come thither on Chriſtmas eve. The Engliſh, on their way to Caſcante, burnt ſeveral villages, and in particular a conſiderable one called Nigrete, which they completely pilliaged.

---

* Quaſquan,—Caſcante, near to Tudela.

CHAP. XI.

SIR THOMAS TRIVET MAKES AN EXCURSION TO THE TOWN OF ALFARO IN CASTILLE.—PEACE CONCLUDED BETWEEN THE KINGS OF SPAIN AND NAVARRE.—THE DEATH OF HENRY KING OF SPAIN.—HIS SON JOHN IS CROWNED AS HIS SUCCESSOR.

WHILST king Henry reſided at Seville, in the heart of his kingdom, news was brought to him that the Engliſh had made an incurſion, and burnt the town of Soria, in the name of the king of Navarre. He was much enraged thereat, and ſwore he would make them pay for it. He wrote letters to his ſon, John of Caſtille, inſtantly commanding him to iſſue a particular ſummons throughout the kingdom, and to aſſemble the nobles; for that he ſhould very ſhortly be in Caſtille, to revenge himſelf on the king of Navarre for the exceſſes which he had committed.

The infant neither dared nor wiſhed to diſobey the commands of his father, but immediately iſſued the ſummons.

Whilſt theſe men at arms were collecting, and before the arrival of king Henry, ſir Thomas Trivet reſolved to march towards a handſome town in Spain called Alfaro. In this deſign, he ſet out one evening from Caſcante, leaving there the king of Navarre, with only one hundred lances; but they

were

were all ſuch as he could depend on. They came near to Alfaro about day-break, and halted a league from the town, where they placed themſelves in ambuſh.

Sir William Cendrin and ſir Andrew Andrac were ſent forwards, with about ten ſpears, to alarm the place. They came to a little brook which runs before the town, and is dangerous to paſs: however, Andrew Andrac and Peter Maſcle, Navarrois, made their courſers leap over it, and galloped up to the barriers.

The town was exceedingly alarmed; and, having ſounded their trumpets to aſſemble their men at arms, they opened the gates and barriers, ſallied forth, and directly began to ſkirmiſh. Of theſe ten lances, there were only thoſe I have named who had croſſed the brook, ſo that, when they ſaw ſuch numbers advancing, they wheeled about and leaped back again.

Thoſe of Alfaro ſeeing ſo ſmall a number, and not ſuſpecting any ambuſcade, followed them cloſely, paſſing the rivulet a little higher up, at the ford. The ten ſpears allowed themſelves to be purſued as far as the ambuſh, from whence ſir Thomas and the others ruſhed full gallop, ſhouting their cry, and, charging the enemy, unhorſed ſeveral. In truth, the Spaniards, unable to withſtand the Engliſh, turned about as quickly as they could: few eſcaped death or being made priſoners.

The alarm was great in the town, which made the Engliſh think they ſhould be immediate maſters of it, for they ſaw the inhabitants were as good as defeated:

defeated: however, they were diſappointed, for the women of the place ſaved it by their preſence of mind. Whilſt the Engliſh were croſſing the brook, they cloſed the gates and barriers, and, having mounted the battlements over the gate, ſhewed every inclination to defend themſelves.

When ſir Thomas ſaw them thus drawn up, he ſaid as he was advancing, 'Look at theſe good women: let us return back, for we cannot do any thing more.' Upon which they retreated, croſſed the brook, and made for Caſcante, carrying with them their priſoners. Sir Thomas Trivet acquired great favour from the king of Navarre for the ſucceſs of this expedition.

About fifteen days after this affair of Alfaro, the Spaniards took the field, amounting in the whole, horſe and foot, to twenty thouſand men, with a good inclination to combat the Engliſh. The king of Navarre, on hearing this, went to Tudela, attended by ſir Thomas Trivet and his troops, and ſent orders for all the garriſons of Navarre to march thither: they willingly obeyed his orders, as they wiſhed for nothing more than to engage the Spaniards.

The Spaniards were only waiting for the arrival of king Henry, who had left Seville with a numerous attendance, and was traverſing his kingdom to St. Domingo, where on his arrival he halted, and quartered his people in the adjacent plain. When don John heard that the king was come to St. Domingo, he left Alfaro, and marched thither with his army. It was the intention of the Spaniards to

lay

lay ſiege to Tudela and incloſe the king of Navarre in it, or force him to fight.

The king of Navarre was informed of all this, and he knew that he was not ſtrong enough to riſk a battle with king Henry, who had forty thouſand men, including horſe and foot.

There were ſome prelates and barons, wiſe and valiant men of both kingdoms, in either army, who foreſaw that great troubles might ariſe if the two kings, Henry and Charles, ſhould mutually ſlay each other in battle: they therefore propoſed an armiſtice, that they might endeavour to ſettle their differences: but theſe negotiators had much labour and difficulty before they could bring matters to an iſſue, for the Engliſh, who amounted to full two thouſand, were haughty and bitter againſt the Spaniards, and adviſed the king of Navarre to riſk a battle.

On the other hand, the Spaniards, who were very numerous, held the Engliſh and Navarrois cheap. The treaties, however, were drawing to a concluſion; and, with much difficulty, an armiſtice was agreed on, for ſix weeks, between the two kingdoms, with the intent of concluding a peace. The negotiators propoſed alſo that a marriage ſhould take place between the eldeſt ſon of king Henry with a daughter of the king of Navarre, that the peace might be more ſolid and durable.

The king of Navarre readily liſtened to this propoſal, for he ſaw by it how highly his daughter would be ſettled. The prelates and barons of both realms adviſed alſo that Charles, eldeſt ſon of the king

king of Navarre, ſhould marry a daughter of king Henry. This was concluded; and don Henry, king of Caſtille, was to uſe his influence with the king of France, under whoſe guardianſhip Charles was, that he ſhould be permitted to return to Navarre. This he performed; and the king of France complied with his requeſt.

The king of Navarre, on account of theſe marriages, was willing to ſurrender, for ten years, to the king of Spain, as a ſecurity for his good faith, the towns and caſtles of Eſtella, of Tudela and of la Guardia.

King Henry conſented to give up to the Engliſh ſir Peter Courtenay and the lord de l'Eſparre, a Gaſcon, who were his priſoners.

All theſe different treaties were ſealed, and ſworn to be faithfully obſerved for ever by the two kings; and it was agreed that whoever ſhould any way infringe them ſhould ſubmit himſelf to the judgment of the pope.

Whilſt theſe negotiations were going forwards, the king of Navarre, who was indebted to the Engliſh twenty thouſand francs, ſent the viſcount de Chaſtillon to Arragon to borrow this ſum from the king of Arragon, who readily lent it to him, but took for his ſecurity the good towns of Pampeluna, Miranda, Borgo la Reyna, Corella and St. Jean du Pied des Ports.

By theſe means, the Engliſh were paid their demands: they left the king of Navarre, well ſatisfied with their conduct, returned to Bourdeaux, and from thence to England.

The marriage was concluded between Charles of Navarre and the daughter of king Henry: ſhe was called Jane, and was very handſome.

In this year the king of Caſtille died, and his eldeſt ſon, don John, ſucceeded him. He was crowned with the conſent of all the prelates and barons of Spain, king of Caſtille, Seville, Gallicia and Cordova; and they ſwore to him, for ever, fealty and homage.

About this time, war commenced between the kings of Portugal and Caſtille, which laſted a conſiderable time, as you will hear related in this hiſtory. But we muſt now return to the affairs of France.

CHAP. XII.

THE LORD DE MUCIDENT TURNS TO THE ENGLISH.—THE LORD DE LANGURANT IS MORTALLY WOUNDED.—THE GOVERNOR OF BOUTEVILLE IS DEFEATED, AND THE CASTLE SURRENDERS TO THE FRENCH.

YOU have before heard that the lord de Mucident had turned to the French party. He had remained at Paris for upwards of a year, until he was tired; for he had expected more from the king of France than he had received, which made him repent having changed his ſide. He ſaid he had been forced ſo to do, and that it was not of his own free will.

He

He therefore reſolved to quit Paris privately, where he had too long reſided, return to his own country, and then ſurrender himſelf to the Engliſh; for he preferred ſerving the king of England to the king of France.

He acted upon this plan, and gave all his acquaintance to underſtand, except thoſe of his council, that he was diſguſted.

One evening he mounted his horſe incognito, only two perſons with him, ſet out from Paris, and rode to his own country, where his people followed him.

He continued his journey until he came to Bourdeaux, where he found the lord Neville, to whom he related his adventures. He attached himſelf to the Engliſh, and declared he would rather betray his troth to the king of France than to his natural lord the king of England.

The lord de Mucident remained ſteady to the Engliſh ever after as long as he lived.

The duke of Anjou was much enraged when he heard of this, and ſwore, that if ever he could lay hands upon him, he would make his head fly from his ſhoulders. This was told to the lord de Mucident, who in conſequence took every precaution in his power.

The lord de Langurant remained ſtedfaſt to the French. He was an able and active knight, and haraſſed much the vaſſals of thoſe who had turned to the Engliſh poſſeſſing lands adjoining to his own; ſuch as the lords de Roſem, de Duras, de Mucident; which made theſe three barons very angry,

and excited them to attempt all means to ſlay him; for he was their bitter enemy.

The lord de Langurant, being a knight eager for battle, was riding out one day attended by about forty lances: he advanced near to an Engliſh garriſon called Cadillac*, which belonged to the captal de Buch and his brothers. He poſted his men in ambuſh in a wood, telling them that he would ride alone to the caſtle to ſee if any one would ſally forth againſt him. His men obeyed: when, riding to the barriers of Cadillac, he ſpoke to the guards, aſking, 'Where is Bernard Courant, your captain? Tell him that the lord de Langurant wiſhes to tilt with him; and, ſince he is ſo valiant a man at arms, he will not refuſe my requeſt for the love of his lady. If he ſhould not conſent, it will turn to his ſhame, and I will publiſh every where that he had refuſed to break a lance with me through cowardice.'

One of the valets of Bernard, at that time at the barriers, replied; 'Lord de Langurant, I have perfectly heard what you have ſaid: I will go and inform my maſter; for cowardice ſhall never be a reproach to him, if you will be ſo good to wait.'

'By my faith,' anſwered the lord de Langurant, 'that I will.' The valet went to his maſter, whom he found in his chamber, and told him what you have heard.

When Bernard heard this, his heart ſwelled with-

* Cadillac,—a village in Guyenne, ſeven leagues from Bourdeaux.

in

in him, and he fiercely exclaimed, 'Give me my arms, and ſaddle my ſteed, for he ſhall never return with a refuſal.' His orders were promptly obeyed: being armed, he mounted on horſeback with his lance and buckler, and, having the gates and barriers thrown open, advanced into the plain.

The lord de Langurant was much pleaſed when he ſaw him: lowering his ſpear, he placed himſelf in the poſition of a good knight, as did his ſquire. They were both well mounted; and, ſpurring their horſes, their lances ſtruck with ſuch force on their ſhields as ſhivered them to pieces. At the ſecond paſs, Bernard Courant gave ſuch a deadly blow on the ſhoulder of the lord de Langurant as to drive him out of his ſaddle, and fell him to the ground. When Bernard ſaw him fall, he was rejoiced, and turning his horſe upon him, as the lord de Langurant was raiſing himſelf up, Bernard, who had great ſtrength, caught him with both hands by the helmet, tore it off his head, and flung it under his horſe.

The troops of the lord de Langurant who were in ambuſh, noticing all this, began to advance to reſcue their lord. Bernard Courant perceived them, and, drawing his dagger, ſaid to the lord de Langurant, 'Surrender yourſelf my priſoner, lord de Langurant, reſcued or not, or you are a dead man.' The lord de Langurant, who truſted to his people for aſſiſtance, was ſhy, and made no anſwer. When Bernard ſaw that he would not make any reply, he was inflamed with paſſion, and, fearing leſt he might ſuffer from delay, ſtruck him with his dagger

on the head, which was bare, and drove it into him: then, drawing it back, he put ſpurs to his horſe, galloped within the barriers, where he diſmounted, and put himſelf in a poſture of defence, if there ſhould be a neceſſity for it.

The lord de Langurant's people, on coming to him, found him mortally wounded: they were very much enraged at it, and, having bandaged his wound as well as they could, carried him back to his caſtle, where he, on the morrow, expired. Such was the end of the lord de Langurant in Gaſcony.

At this period, a deed of arms was performed, in the Rochellois, againſt Heliot de Plaiſac, a very amiable ſquire and gallant man at arms, governor of Bouteville*, an Engliſh garriſon, wherein there were about ſix ſcore lances, Engliſh and Gaſcons, who, pillaging the whole country, advanced almoſt daily as far as the towns of la Rochelle or St. Jean d'Angeli. They kept theſe towns in ſuch dread that none dared to venture out but very privately, which angered greatly the knights and ſquires of that country.

They conſidered well this buſineſs, and reſolved either to apply ſuch a remedy as would put a ſtop to it, or to loſe their lives or liberties in the attempt. They collected, in the town of la Rochelle, about two hundred ſpears, on whom they could depend; for it was towards this town that Heliot de Plaiſac made his excurſions. There were now in it, from

* Bouteville,—near Cognac.

Poitou

Poitou and Saintonge, the lords de Touars, de Puiſſances, ſir James de Surgeres, ſir Perceval de Coulogne, ſir Reginald de Gomers, ſir Hugh de Vivonne, and ſeveral other knights and ſquires, all well inclined to meet and combat their enemies. Theſe lords had had information that Heliot de Plaiſac was on his march towards la Rochelle, in ſearch of prey. They gave their orders accordingly, and ſallied out in the evening well armed and mounted. On their departure, they directed that the cattle ſhould, on the morrow, be driven out to the fields to take their chance; which was obeyed.

When the morrow came, Heliot de Plaiſac and his troop arrived before la Rochelle, whilſt their foragers collected the cattle, and had them driven away by the peaſants of the country. They had not gone more than a league before the French (who were upwards of two hundred lances) fell upon their wing, quite unexpectedly, and charged them vigorouſly; ſo that at this firſt onſet, ſeveral were unhorſed.

Heliot de Plaiſac cried out; 'On foot, on foot! let no man fly, but ſend away the horſes; for, if the day be ours, we ſhall have horſes enow, and, if we loſe it, we ſhall not want any.' The Engliſh and Gaſcons, of Heliot's party, drew up on foot, and in good order. The French did the ſame, for they were afraid of their horſes being wounded by the ſpears and ſwords of the enemy.

The battle then commenced. It was ſevere, and of long continuance; for they fought hand to

hand, puſhing their ſpears up to their guards at every thruſt. Many gallant deeds were done; there was many a capture, and many a reſcue. However, the Poitevins and Saintongers won the field, and their enemies were either ſlain or made priſoners, for very few eſcaped: the forage was recaptured, and Heliot de Plaiſac taken and carried to la Rochelle.

Shortly afterward, theſe lords marched to the caſtle of Bouteville, which was ſoon and eaſily taken, for ſcarcely any one was within it.

Thus was Bouteville gained by the French, to the great joy of all the country round about. Heliot de Plaiſac remained in priſon for a long time.

CHAP. XIII.

SIR THOMAS TRIVET RETURNS TO ENGLAND WITH HIS COMPANIONS.—HIS HERALD RELATES TO THE DUKE OF LANCASTER THE PARTICULARS OF THE DEATH OF KING HENRY OF CASTILLE, AND THE CORONATION OF HIS ELDEST SON DON JOHN.

AT this time, ſir Thomas Trivet, ſir William Helmen, and the other knights who had been in Spain to the aſſiſtance of the king of Navarre, returned to England. They immediately waited on the king, who at that time reſided at Chertſey: his two uncles, the duke of Lancaſter and the earl of Cambridge, were with him.

Theſe

These knights were graciously received by the king and his lords; and many questions were asked concerning the news of the countries they came from: they told all they knew; how the war had been carried on in Spain and Navarre, and how those two kings had concluded a peace, relating exactly the articles of the treaties, and also that the king of Navarre had married his eldest son to a daughter of king Henry.

The duke of Lancaster and the earl of Cambridge were very pensive on hearing this intelligence, for they had considered themselves as heirs to all Spain in right of their wives: they inquired at what time king Henry had died, and if the Spaniards had crowned his son king.

Sir Thomas Trivet and sir William Helmen answered; 'My dear lords, when king Henry the bastard died, we were not at the coronation of his son; for at that time we had retreated into Navarre; but we have a herald who was present, and you may, if you please, learn from him every particular concerning it.'

The herald was called in, and the duke desired he would relate how every thing passed. He answered; 'My lords, I will comply with your request, and tell you all. While these knights were at Pampeluna, waiting the conclusion of the treaties, I remained by their permission with the king of Navarre, and was much respected by him and by his people. I left Pampeluna, and accompanied him to St. Domingo, where, on his approach, king Henry came out to meet him with a numerous train, as a proof of his affection.

'The

'The king of Navarre and his people were treated with much honour: in the evening he was entertained with a very handſome ſupper. While at table, news was brought that a wild boar was diſcovered in the adjoining moors: a hunting party was directly formed for the morrow. The two kings and their huntſmen were preſent; the boar was taken; and they returned to St. Domingo in the moſt friendly manner.

'The next day, king Henry ſet out for Pierre-ferrade*, to keep an appointment he had made with his people. He was there ſeized with an illneſs, of which he died. The king of Navarre was told of it as he was on his road to viſit him: he returned back much vexed thereat. I then took my leave of him, and went to Caſtille to learn what was going forward.

'King Henry died on Whitſunday. Shortly after,

---

* Pierre-ferrade. Q. I cannot find any thing like this name in the map near to St. Domingo. There is Pon-ferrada on the weſtern borders of Léon, but that appears to be too diſtant.

Denys Sauvage does not ſeem to underſtand this paſſage.

Moreri ſays, Henry died at St. Domingo.

Ferreras, in his hiſtory of Spain, ſays, the vulgar report was, that Henry was poiſoned by means of a handſome pair of buſkins, which Mahomet king of Granada ſent him as a preſent, leſt, when having made peace with the king of Navarre, he might turn his arms againſt him. Ferreras himſelf ſeems to doubt it. He died at Saint Domingo la Calçada, 29th May 1374. The infant John was inſtantly proclaimed king, and left St. Domingo for Burgos, carrying with him the body of his father, which he depoſited there, in order for its being tranſported to Toledo.

on

on the 25th day of July, the feaſt of St. James and St. Chriſtopher, John, eldeſt ſon of the late king Henry, was crowned king of Caſtille, in the cathedral church of the city of Burgos. All the barons and prelates of Spain, Galicia, Cordova and Seville were preſent, and ſwore, on the holy Evangeliſts, their homages to him as king. He created that day two hundred and ten knights, and made ſeveral magnificent preſents. On the morrow after his coronation, he went, attended by great numbers of his nobles, to a convent of nuns, out of Burgos, which is called les Oruches, where he heard maſs, and dined. After dinner, there was a grand tournament; at which the viſcount de Roquebertin, from Arragon, won the prize. When this was over, the king returned to Burgos, where the feaſts laſted for fifteen days,'

The duke of Lancaſter aſked if the king of Portugal had been invited thither: the herald ſaid, 'He had been invited, but did not come; and I was informed he told the envoy who carried the invitation, that he would never attend the coronation of the ſon of a baſtard.'

'On my faith,' replied the duke, 'he did well to ſend ſuch an anſwer, and I thank him for it. Things ſhall not long remain as they now are. It ſhall ſoon be otherwiſe, for my brother and myſelf will call upon don John for that inheritance of which he now ſtiles himſelf king.' Here the converſation ended, when they called for wine and refreſhments.

We will now leave this matter, and return to what was paſſing in France.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

THE EARL OF FLANDERS STOPS THE PROGRESS OF AN AMBASSADOR FROM THE KING OF FRANCE TO SCOTLAND: THIS CAUSES GREAT DISSENSIONS BETWEEN THEM.

KING Charles, who at this time governed France, was very ſagacious and ſubtile, as his conduct ſhewed; for, though he never quitted his cloſet or his amuſements, he re-conquered all that his predeceſſors had loſt in the field at the head of their armies, for which he was greatly to be commended.

Now, becauſe the king of France knew that king Robert of Scotland, and that whole kingdom, bore a mortal hatred to the Engliſh (for never can theſe two kingdoms love each other), that a better underſtanding between him and the Scots might be continued, he determined to ſend one of his knights, and a ſecretary to his council, to king Robert and the Scots, to treat with them; to examine the ſtate of that country, and ſee whether they were in a condition to carry on any effectual war: for Evan of Wales had during his life-time informed him, that the moſt certain way of diſturbing England was through Scotland.

The king of France, having well conſidered this matter, had various ideas on the ſubject; and, having fixed his plan, he called to him one of his knights, a prudent man, named ſir Peter lord de Bourneze', and ſaid; 'You will carry this meſ-

ſage

ſage to Scotland, and ſalute the king and barons, with the aſſurance that we and our realm are willing to enter into treaties with them on the footing of good friends, in order that, when the ſeaſon ſhall be favourable, we may ſend over troops, to be there admitted in the like manner as the practice has been with our predeceſſors in former times: and in your journies thither and back again, as well as during your reſidence, you will take care to keep ſuch ſtate as ſhall become an ambaſſador from the king; for ſuch is our will; and every expenſe ſhall be repaid you.' The knight anſwered, 'Sire, your orders ſhall be obeyed.'

He did not delay his journey long after this; but, when his preparations were ready, he took leave of the king, and ſet out from Paris, continuing his route until he came to Sluys in Flanders. He waited there for a wind, which being unfavourable, detained him fifteen days. During this time he lived magnificently; and gold and ſilver plate were in ſuch profuſion in the apartments as if he had been a prince. He had alſo muſic to announce his dinner, and cauſed to be carried before him a ſword in a ſcabbard, richly blazoned with his arms in gold and ſilver. His ſervants paid well for every thing.

Many of the townſpeople were much aſtoniſhed at the great ſtate this knight lived in at home, which he alſo maintained when he went abroad. The bailiff of the town, who was an officer under the earl of Flanders, had noticed this conduct, and could not remain ſilent on the ſubject, for which he was to blame, but went and informed the earl

of

of it, who at the time reſided at Bruges, and his couſin the duke of Brittany with him.

The earl of Flanders having conſidered a while, with the advice of the duke of Brittany, ordered the ambaſſador to be brought thither. The bailiff returned to Sluys, and came very uncourteouſly to the king's knight; for he laid his hand on him, and arreſted him in the name of the earl.

The knight was exceedingly ſurpriſed at this proceeding: he told the bailiff, that he was ambaſſador and commiſſioner from the king of France. The bailiff ſaid, 'that might be; but he muſt ſpeak with the earl, who had ordered him to be conducted into his preſence.' The knight could not by any means excuſe himſelf from being carried to Bruges with all his attendants. When he was brought into the apartments of the earl, he and the duke of Brittany were leaning on a window which looked into the gardens. The knight caſt himſelf on his knees before the earl, and ſaid, 'My lord, I am your priſoner.' At which words, the earl was mightly enraged, and replied with paſſion; 'How, raſcal, do you dare to call yourſelf my priſoner when I have only ſent to ſpeak with you? The ſubjects of my lord may very freely come and ſpeak with me; but thou haſt ill acquitted thyſelf by remaining ſo long at Sluys without coming to viſit me, when thou kneweſt I was ſo near; but, I ſuppoſe, thou diſdainedſt it.' 'My lord,' anſwered the knight, 'ſaving your diſpleaſure'—He was interrupted by the duke of Brittany, who ſaid, 'It is

by

by ſuch tattlers and jeſters of the parliament of Paris, and of the king's chamber, as you, that the kingdom is governed; and you manage the king as you pleaſe, to do good or evil according to your wills: there is not a prince of the blood, however great he may be, if he incur your hatred, who will be liſtened to: but ſuch fellows ſhall yet be hanged, until the gibbets be full of them.'

The knight, who was ſtill on his knees, was much mortified by theſe words: he ſaw that it was better for him to be ſilent than to make any reply: he did not therefore anſwer, but quitted the preſence of the earl and his lords, when he found an opportunity. Some worthy people who were with the earl made way for him, and carried him to refreſh himſelf.

The knight afterwards mounted his horſe, and returned to his hôtel in Sluys, where I will tell you what happened to him. Although all his ſtores were embarked, and there was a favourable wind for Scotland, he would not ſail and riſk the dangers of the ſea; for he was warned that he was watched by the Engliſh who reſided in Sluys, and that, if he ſhould ſail, he would be taken, and carried to England. Through fear of this happening, he gave up his intended voyage, quitted Sluys, and returned to the king at Paris.

You may eaſily imagine, that the lord de Bournezel was not long before he told the king all that had befallen him in Flanders: he related every thing exactly as it had happened. It was neceſſary he ſhould do ſo by way of excuſing himſelf for not having

having obeyed his orders, as the king was very much ſurpriſed at his return.

When ſir Peter was relating the events of this journey, there were preſent ſeveral knights of the king's chamber: in particular, ſir John de Guiſtelles of Hainault, a couſin to the earl of Flanders, who mutteringly repeated the words of ſir Peter; ſo that, thinking the knight had ſpoken too freely of the earl of Flanders, he could not contain himſelf, but ſaid; 'I cannot thus hear my dear couſin the earl of Flanders ſo ſlightingly ſpoken of; and if, ſir knight, you mean to affirm for truth all you have ſaid, and aſſert that he by his act prevented you from fulfilling your orders, I challenge you to the field, and here is my glove.'

The lord de Bournezel was not ſlow to reply; 'Sir John, I ſay that I was thus arreſted and conducted by the bailiff of Sluys, and brought before the earl of Flanders; and that every word which I have ſpoken as from that earl and the duke of Brittany were ſaid by them; and if you wiſh to ſay any thing to the contrary, and that it was not ſo, I will take up your glove.' 'I do ſay ſo,' replied the lord de Guiſtelles.

At theſe words, the king looked very grave, and ſaid, 'Come, come; we will hear no more of this.' He then retired into his cloſet, attended by his chamberlains, very well pleaſed that ſir Peter had ſo frankly ſpoken, and had ſo well anſwered ſir John de Guiſtelles. He ſaid to them ſmiling, 'He has kept his ground well: I would not for twenty thouſand francs it had not ſo happened.'

Sir

Sir John de Guiſtelles, who was one of the king's chamberlains, was afterwards ſo ill at court, and received with ſo much coldneſs, that he noticed it, and wiſhed not to abide the conſequences: he therefore took leave of the king, and went to Brabant to duke Winceſlaus, who retained him in his ſervice.

With regard to the king of France, he was much angered with the earl of Flanders; for it appeared to ſeveral of the kingdom, that he had prevented the lord de Bournezel from continuing his journey to Scotland. He had alſo entertained his couſin the duke of Brittany, who was greatly out of favour with the king of France. Thoſe who were near the perſon of the king eaſily ſaw that the earl of Flanders was not in his good graces.

Shortly after this event, the king of France wrote very ſharp letters to his couſin the earl of Flanders, which contained alſo menaces, for that he had ſupported and kept with him the duke of Brittany, whom he conſidered as his enemy.

The earl wrote back again, and made the beſt excuſes he could. Theſe were, however, of no avail; for the king of France ſent him ſharper letters, in which he declared, that if he did not ſend away his enemy the duke of Brittany, he would look upon him in the ſame light. When the earl of Flanders ſaw the manner in which the king took it, and that he would follow it up, he conſidered with himſelf (for he had a quick imagination), and reſolved to ſhew theſe menaces to his principal towns, more eſpecially to Ghent, to know what an-

ſwer they would wiſh him to ſend. He diſpatched copies to Bruges, Ypres and Courtray; and he ſet out with the duke of Brittany for Ghent, where they were lodged at the poſtern gate. He was received by the citizens with very great joy, for at that time they were much pleaſed to have him among them. When the deputies from the other towns were arrived, according to their orders, the count had them aſſembled; and John de la Faucille harangued them, in his name, on the cauſe of his meeting them: he read to them the letters which had been received within the laſt two months from the king of France. After theſe letters had been read, the earl ſpoke as follows: 'My children, and good people of Flanders, through God's grace, I have been for a long time your lord: I have governed you in peace as much as was in my power; and you have never ſeen any thing in me but a deſire to maintain you in proſperity, as a good lord ſhould act in regard to his ſubjects. It muſt be very diſpleaſing to me, and to you alſo who are my faithful ſubjects, that I ſhould incur the hatred of my lord the king, becauſe I keep with me my couſin-german the duke of Brittany, who at this time is not in favour with the court of France; nor, in truth, can he place any dependance on his vaſſals of Brittany, through the hatred of five or ſix of his barons. The king inſiſts that I baniſh him my houſe and territories, which would be very extraordinary. I do not ſay but that if I ſhould aſſiſt my couſin in oppoſition to France, the king might have cauſe to complain: but I have neither done ſo,

nor

nor have I any ſuch inclinations. It is for this cauſe I have aſſembled you, to explain to you the dangers that might happen if you ſhould be deſirous for him to remain with me.'

They anſwered unanimouſly; 'My lord, we do wiſh him to remain with you: and we know not that prince, however great he may be, who ſhould reſolve to make war upon you, but who would find in your earldom of Flanders two hundred thouſand men completely armed.'

This reply was very agreeable to the earl of Flanders, who ſaid, 'My good children, I thank you.' The aſſembly now broke up; and the earl was ſo well pleaſed that he gave them permiſſion to return to their own homes in peace. The earl, at a proper time, returned to Bruges in company with the duke of Brittany. Things remained in this ſituation. The earl was very popular with his ſubjects, and the country continued in peace and proſperity: this, however, did not laſt long, through extraordinary wickedneſs, which brought on great tribulation, as you will hear related in this hiſtory.

CHAP. XV.

THE DUKE OF BRITTANY RETIRES FROM FLANDERS TO ENGLAND.—THE YOUNG COUNT DE ST. POL, WHILE A PRISONER IN ENGLAND, MARRIES.

THE king of France was punctually informed of every thing that had paſſed, and the ſpeech which the earl of Flanders had made. He did not love him the better for this: but, as he could not remedy it, he thought it more prudent to overlook it: he declared, however, that the earl was the proudeſt prince alive. From the king's manner, it was viſible he was the lord he would moſt willingly have humbled, both for his pride and for his oppoſition to his deſires.

The earl of Flanders, notwithſtanding the king of France had written to ſay he was very much diſpleaſed at his keeping the duke of Brittany with him, did not ſend him away, but entertained him as long as he wiſhed to ſtay, and gave him a handſome eſtabliſhment. At laſt, the duke was adviſed to viſit England, which he likewiſe wiſhed to ſee: he took leave of the earl his couſin, and went to Gravelines, where he was met by the earl of Saliſbury, with five hundred men at arms and a thouſand archers, for fear of the French garriſons, and conducted to Calais: ſir Hugh Calverley, the governor, received him with all reſpect.

When

When the duke had ſtaid at Calais five days, having a favourable wind, he embarked with the earl of Saliſbury, and landed at Dover, and from thence went to the young king Richard, who received them with much joy; as did alſo the duke of Lancaſter, the earls of Cambridge and Buckingham, and the great baons of England.

You have before heard how ſir Valeran de Luxembourg, the young count de St. Pol, had been made priſoner in a battle between Ardres and Calais, and had been carried to England under the king's pleaſure, who had purchaſed him of the lord de Gommegines: for the lord de Gommegines had ſet on foot this expedition, in which the count had been made a priſoner by a ſquire, a good man at arms, from the country of Gueldres.

The young count de St. Pol remained long time a priſoner in England, without being ranſomed: true it is, that the king of England, during the life-time of the captal de Buch, offered him ſeveral times to the king of France and to his allies in exchange for the captal; but neither the king of France nor his council would liſten to it, nor give up the captal in exchange, to the great diſſatisfaction of the king of England.

Things remained for ſome time in this ſituation. The count de St. Pol had an agreeable priſon in the beautiful caſtle of Windſor, and was allowed the liberty of amuſing himſelf with hawking wherever he pleaſed in the environs of Weſtminſter and Windſor: he was thus truſted on the faith of his word.

The princeſs, mother of king Richard, reſided at that time at Windſor, with her daughter, the lady Maude, the moſt beautiful woman in England. The young count de St. Pol and this lady fell loyally in love with each other: they frequently met at dancings, carollings, and at other amuſements; ſo that it was ſuſpected the young lady tenderly loved the count, and ſhe diſcovered the whole to her mother.

A treaty of marriage was then entered into between the count de St. Pol and the lady Maude Holland: the count was ranſomed for ſix ſcore thouſand francs; of which one half was to be remitted on his marriage, the remainder he was to pay. When the treaty had been concluded between the young people, the king of England granted permiſſion for the count to croſs the ſea, in order to procure his ranſom, on his promiſe to return within the year.

The count went to France to ſee his friends, the king and his couſins of France, the earl of Flanders, the duke of Brabant, and alſo duke Albert.

In this year, a cruel charge was laid againſt the count de St. Pol: he was accuſed of an intention to deliver up to the Engliſh the ſtrong caſtle of Bouchain. The king ordered him to be arreſted and cloſely guarded, declaring that the count in fact meant to have entered into treaties inimical towards him; from which charge the count could never clear himſelf. On this occaſion alſo, the lord canon de Robeſart, the lord de Vertaing, ſir James

James du Sart and Gerard d'Obies were impriſoned in the caſtle of Mons in Hainault.

This charge at length came to nothing; for, the king of France not being able to prove any thing againſt them, they were ſet at liberty. The young count returned to England, to acquit himſelf of his engagement to the king, and to marry his bride. He paid the ſixty thouſand francs according to his obligation, and re-croſſed the ſea, but did not enter France, for the king diſliked him much.

The count and counteſs went therefore to reſide at the caſtle of Han ſur Heure, which the lord de Moraine, who had married his ſiſter, lent them; and there they remained during the life of the king of France; for the count could never regain his love.

We will now leave theſe things, and return to the affairs of France.

CHAP. XVI.

THE DUKE OF ANJOU MAKES WAR ON BRITTANY, —SIR WILLIAM DES BORDES IS TAKEN PRISONER BY THE GARRISON OF CHERBOURG.

AT this period, all Brittany wa armed, as well againſt the duke as againſt the French. Several of the principal towns had a good under-

ſtanding with the duke, and wondered he was not ſent for back: there were alſo many knights and ſquires of Brittany of the ſame opinion; and, by means of a treaty, the counteſs de Penthievre, mother to the children of Charles de Blois, was not averſe to his return. But ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, conſtable of France, the lords de Cliſſon, de Laval, the viſcount de Rohan and the lord de Rochefort kept the country in a ſtate of warfare with the force ſent them from France. At Pontorſon, St. Malo, and in that neighbourhood, were great numbers of men at arms from France, Normandy, Auvergne, and Burgundy, who committed very great devaſtations.

The duke of Brittany, who was in England, received full information of all this, and that the duke of Anjou, who reſided at Angers, was carrying the war into his country: he heard alſo that the principal towns had armed themſelves againſt the French, as well as ſeveral knights and ſquires, in his name, for which he felt himſelf much obliged.

But, notwithſtanding all theſe favourable ſymptoms, he was afraid to return to Brittany with full confidence in them, for he was always ſuſpicious of ſome treaſon: neither did his own council, the king of England, nor duke of Lancaſter adviſe him to go thither.

Sir William des Bordes maintained the garriſons in Normandy and Valognes of which he was captain: he had with him the deputy ſénéſchal of Eu, ſir William Marcel, ſir Braque de Braquemont, the

lord

lord de Torcy, ſir Percival d'Ayneval, the bègue d'Yury, ſir Lancelot de Lorris, with many other knights and ſquires, who, day and night, employed their thoughts in deviſing how they could damage Cherbourg, of which ſir John Harleſtone was governor.

The garriſon of Cherbourg made as frequent ſallies as they pleaſed; for they could do ſo without any one knowing of it, through the extenſive foreſt with which they were ſurrounded. They had made a road through the wood in ſuch a manner that they could overrun part of Normandy without danger from the French.

It fell out that both garriſons made an excurſion the ſame day without the knowledge of each other, and by accident met at a place called Paſtoy es Bois. When they met, like knights and ſquires deſirous of fighting, they all diſmounted except ſir Lancelot de Lorris, who remained on horſeback, his lance in its reſt, and his target on his neck, requeſting a tilt in honour of his lady.

Several heard his demand; for there were alſo among the Engliſh ſome knights and ſquires who had bound themſelves in like manner by vows of love to their ladies. I believe it was ſir John Copeland, a hardy knight, who accepted his challenge. Then, ſpurring their horſes, they charged each other very gallantly, and gave dreadful blows on their targets. Sir Lancelot was, however, ſo ſeverely ſtruck by the Engliſh knight that his ſhield and other armour were pierced through, and himſelf

ſelf mortally wounded. It was a great pity, for he was an expert knight, young, handſome, and much in love. He was there and elſewhere ſincerely lamented.

The French and Engliſh then attacked each other, fighting hand to hand. On the part of the French, ſir William des Bordes, the deputy ſénéſchal of Eu, ſir William Marcel, ſir Braque de Braquemont, and the others, ſhewed themſelves good knights, and fought manfully. Sir John Harleſtone, ſir Philip Picourde, ſir John Burley, ſir John Copeland, and the reſt of the Engliſh behaved as well; and, from their ſuperior fighting, they at laſt won the day. The French knights and ſquires were either taken or ſlain: in particular, a ſquire from Hainault, called William de Beaulieu, and ſir William des Bordes were made priſoners. They were conducted to Cherbourg, where they met ſir Oliver du Gueſclin, who was a priſoner alſo.

Thus ended this buſineſs, as I was informed,

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

GEOFFRY TETE-NOIR AND AIMERIGOT MARCEL, CAPTAINS ATTACHED TO ENGLAND, TAKE SEVERAL STRONG PLACES IN AUVERGNE AND LIMOUSIN FROM THE FRENOH.

THERE happened daily in Auvergne and Limouſin feats of arms, and wonderful enterprizes; more eſpecially in the neighbourhood of the caſtle of Ventadour, in Auvergne, which is one of the ſtrongeſt places in all that country. It was ſold or betrayed to the moſt cruel of all Bretons, called Geoffry Tête-noir. I will relate how this happened.

The count de Ventadour de Montpenſier was an ancient knight and honourable man, who no longer took part in the wars, but remained peaceably in his caſtle: this knight had a ſquire or varlet, called Ponce du Bois, who had ſerved him for a length of time without having profited much by his ſervice: ſeeing that henceforward he ſhould have no opportunities of gaining riches, he determined, by bad advice, to enrich himſelf, and in conſequence entered into a ſecret treaty with Geoffry Tête-noir, who reſided in Limouſin, to deliver up the caſtle of Ventadour to him for the ſum of ſix thouſand francs. This was agreed to; but he had had inſerted among the conditions that no

harm

harm ſhould be done to his maſter, the count de Ventadour, and that he ſhould be put out of his caſtle in a courteous manner, and that every thing of his ſhould be reſtored to him.

This was complied with, for the Bretons and Engliſh who entered the caſtle did not in the ſmalleſt degree hurt the count nor his people, and only retained the ſtores and artillery, of which there were great plenty.

The count de Ventadour went to reſide at Montpenſier*, with his wife and children, beyond Aigueperſe in Auvergne.

Geoffry Tête-noir and his troops kept poſſeſſion of Ventadour; from whence they ravaged the country, and took many ſtrong caſtles in Auvergne, Rouergue, Limouſin, Quercy, Gevaudan, Bigorre, and in the Agenois, one after the other.

With this Geoffry Tête-noir, there were other captains, who performed many excellent deeds of arms, as Aimerigot Marcel, a Limouſin ſquire attached to the Engliſh party, who took the ſtrong caſtle of Caſſuriel, ſituated in the biſhoprick of Clermont in Auvergne; from whence the abovementioned Aimerigot and his companions overran the country at their pleaſure. Captains of other caſtles were alſo in his company, ſuch as the bourg Calart, the bourg Anglois, the bourg de Champagne, Raymond de Force, a Gaſcon, and Peter de Béarn, a Béarnois.

---

* Montpenſier,—a town in Auvergne, dioceſe of Clermont, near Aigueperſe.

Aimerigot made one day an excurſion, with only twelve companions, to ſeek adventures: they took the road towards Aloiſe, near St. Flour, which has a handſome caſtle in the biſhoprick of Clermont: they knew the caſtle was only guarded by the porter. As they were riding ſilently towards Aloiſe, Aimerigot ſpies the porter ſitting on the trunk of a tree withoutſide of the caſtle: a Breton, who ſhot extraordinarily well with a croſs-bow, ſays to him, 'Would you like to have that porter killed at a ſhot?' 'Yes,' replied Aimerigot; 'and I beg you will do ſo.' The croſs-bowman ſhoots a bolt, which he drives into the porter's head, and knocks him down: the porter, feeling himſelf mortally wounded, regains the gate, which he attempts to ſhut, but cannot, and falls down dead.

Aimerigot and his companions haſten to the caſtle, which they enter by the wicket, and ſee the porter lying dead and his wife diſtracted beſide him: they do her no harm, but enquire where the conſtable of the caſtle is: ſhe replies that he is at Clermont. They promiſe to ſpare her life, if ſhe will give them the keys of the caſtle and of the dungeon; which when ſhe has done, for ſhe could not any way defend herſelf, they ſhut her out, having given her what belonged to her, and indeed as much as ſhe could carry away.

She went to St. Flour, which is but a league off: the inhabitants were much frightened, as well as all they adjoining country, when they heard that Aloiſe was become Engliſh.

Soon

Soon after this, Aimerigot Marcel re-captured the ſtrong caſtle of Balon by ſurpriſe; the governor was aſleep in the great tower, when he ſcaled the walls, for the place was not eaſy to be taken by force; but, by means of this tower, the caſtle might be gained.

Aimerigot, therefore, thought of a ſubtle trick: having poſſeſſion of the father and mother of the governor, he ordered them to be led in ſight of the tower, making every preparation to behead them, if the ſon did not ſurrender himſelf." Theſe good people thought they were inſtantly to be murdered, and cried out to their ſon to take compaſſion on them, bewailing moſt lamentably their unfortunate lot.

The governor was much affected: he could not ſuffer his parents to be put to death: he therefore ſurrendered the tower, when the whole family were thruſt out of the caſtle. Thus did Balon belong to the Engliſh, a circumſtance which, in its conſequences, much haraſſed the country; for all ſorts of people who wiſhed to do evil retired thither, or to Caſſuriel, two leagues from Limoges, to Carlat, to Aloiſe, to Ventadour, or to ſome other ſuch caſtles.

When theſe garriſons were all collected in a body, they might amount to five or ſix hundred lances: they overran the whole country, and the territories of the count dauphin d'Auvergne, ſituated at no great diſtance from their garriſon; for none ventured to oppoſe them when thus collected together. It is true, the lord de Chupier

was

was a great enemy to them; as were the lord de Forterel and the baſtard de Forterel, his brother, and a ſquire from the Bourbonnois called Gordomes. This Gordomes, one day meeting Aimerigot Marcel, by a gallant exploit, took him priſoner, and ranſomed him for five thouſand francs: ſo much did he gain for him. Thus was the war carried on in Auvergne, Limouſin and the adjoining countries.

CHAP. XVIII.

A SCHISM IN THE CHURCH.—THE CAUSE OF IT.—THE BRETONS MAKE WAR ON THE ROMANS.—THE QUEEN OF NAPLES GIVES UP HER TERRITORIES TO POPE CLEMENT VII.

I HAVE been a long while ſilent on the affairs of the church: I now return to them, for it is become neceſſary. You have before heard how the cardinals, to appeaſe the Roman populace, who were very much enraged againſt them, had choſen for pope the archbiſhop of Bari, whoſe name, before his elevation, was Bartholomew Prignano: he afterwards aſſumed that of Urban VI. and gave indulgences according to the uſual cuſtom.

The cardinals intended, on a proper opportunity, to make another election: for this pope, being choleric and obſtinate, was neither profitable to them nor to the church; ſo that when he found himſelf inveſted

inveſted with the powers of papacy, in conſequence of which many princes of Chriſtendom had written to him to acknowledge their obedience, he became very haughty, and deſirous of retrenching the powers of the cardinals, and depriving them of ſeveral of their rights and accuſtomed prerogatives.

This conduct was highly diſpleaſing to them: they held a metting, and declared that he would never do them any ſervice, and was beſide unfit to govern the Chriſtian world. Several propoſed to elect another, more wiſe and prudent, and better able to govern the church. The whole body were eager for this, more eſpecially that cardinal who was afterwards elected pope.

During the whole ſummer, the affair continued in ſuſpenſe; for thoſe who wiſhed a new election dared not publicly declare their intentions for fear of the Romans. About the time of the vacations, many cardinals left Rome to amuſe themſelves in different places in the neighbourhood. Urban went to a city called Tivoli, where he remained a conſiderable time. During theſe vacations or terms, (that laſted not long, for there were many clergy from different parts of the world at Rome, waiting for graces which had been promiſed, ſome of whom had been collated to churches,) the refractory cardinals aſſembled to elect a pope, and their unanimous choice fell on ſir Robert de Geneva, ſon to the count of Geneva, whoſe firſt promotion had been to the biſhoprick of Terouenne, then to the archbiſhoprick of Cambray, and at laſt cardinal of Geneva. The greater number of cardinals attended this

this election. The new pope took the name of Clement.

At this period, Silveſter Budes, a valiant knight from Brittany, was in the country near Rome, and had under him upwards of two thouſand Bretons, who in the late years had done much againſt the Florentines, whom pope Gregory had made war upon and excommunicated for their rebellion; but, through the interceſſion of Silveſter Budes, they had been pardoned.

Pope Clement and the cardinals of his party, ſent ſecretly for him and his troops. He marched directly into the ſtrong caſtle of St. Angelo, in the village of St. Peter, the better to check the Romans.

Pope Urban, and the cardinals attached to him, were afraid to quit Tivoli, though they very much wiſhed it, on account of theſe Bretons; for they were determined men, who murdered all whom they met in oppoſition to them.

The Romans, on finding how dangerouſly they were ſituated, ſent for other ſoldiers, Germans and Lombards, who daily ſkirmiſhed with the Bretons. Clement granted indulgences to all the clergy who wiſhed for them, and publiſhed his election throughout the world.

When king Charles of France was informed of this, he was much aſtoniſhed: he ſummoned his brothers and all the great barons, the prelates, the rector and principal doctors of the univerſity of Paris, to know which of the two popes, the firſt or the laſt, he ought to pay obedience to. This matter was not ſoon determined, for the clergy wer

of divided opinions: but, in the end, all the prelates in France inclined to Clement, as did the king's brothers and the majority of the univerſity of Paris. The king received ſo much inſtruction and information at this aſſembly from the moſt learned of the clergy, that he put himſelf under the obedience of Clement, whom he held for the true and loyal pope. He then publiſhed an edict throughout his realm for every perſon to conſider Clement as pope, and to obey him as a god upon earth.

The king of Spain was of the ſame opinion; as were the earl of Savoy, the duke of Milan and the queen of Naples.

Clement having gained the king of France, his cauſe acquired great credit; for the kingdom of France is the fountain of faith and of excellence, from the grand churches which are eſtabliſhed there and the noble prelatures.

Charles of Bohemia, king of Germany and emperor of Rome, was ſtill living: he reſided at Prague in Bohemia, where he had heard of all theſe things to his great aſtoniſhment. However, his empire of Germany, excepting the biſhoprick of Trect*, was ſo ſtrongly inclined in their faith to Urban, that they would not hear mention made of another. The emperor diſſembled as long as he lived, and replied ſo courteouſly, whenever any converſation paſſed on this ſubject, that his barons and prelates were quite ſatisfied. Notwithſtanding

* Trect. Q. Trent.

this,

this, the churches in the empire obeyed Urban; but the whole of Scotland acknowledged Clement.

Earl Lewis of Flanders oppreſſed very much the Clementiſts in Brabant, Hainault and Liege; for he was a determined Urbaniſt, and ſaid that this pope had been ſcandalouſly treated. The earl was ſo much believed and loved in the parts where he reſided, that on his ſole account, the churches and landholders followed his opinion. But thoſe of Hainault, with the churches and their appendages, as well as their ſovereign, called Albert, remained neuter, and obeyed neither one nor other of the popes; for which reaſon the archbiſhop of Cambray at that time, called John, loſt his temporalities in Hainault.

Pope Clement, about this time, ſent the cardinal de Poitiers, a very prudent and wiſe man, to France, Hainault, Flanders and Brabant, to preach and to inſtruct the people; for he had been preſent at the firſt conclave, and could well explain that through fear they had elected the archbiſhop of Bari to the papacy.

The king of France, his brothers and the prelates of that realm, received him very graciouſly, and liſtened attentively to his words and doctrines, which ſeemed to carry truth with them, and to be of a nature to engage their whole faith. On leaving France, he went to Hainault, where he was received with joy. He was alſo received in the ſame manner by the duke and ducheſs of Brabant, but gained nothing more. He thought of calling at Liege on his return, but was adviſed to the contrary,

trary, and therefore returned to Tournay, intending to viſit Flanders from thence, and converſe with the earl: however, he did not; for it was ſignified to him from the earl, that he would have nothing to ſay to him, conſidering Urban as pope, and in that opinion would live and die.

The cardinal went from Tournay to Valenciennes, and from thence to Cambray, where he ſtaid a long time in hopes of receiving good news.

Thus was the chriſtian world divided, and the churches differed in regard to which was the legal pope. Urban had the larger number; but the moſt profitable in revenue and obedience fell to Clement.

Clement, by the advice of his cardinals, ſent to have the palace at Avignon prepared for him; for it was his intention to retire thither as ſoon as he was able. In the interim, he reſided at Fondi, where he granted his indulgences to all ſuch clergy as were deſirous of having them.

Large bodies of ſoldiers occupied the plains and villages near Rome, and made war upon that city and the village of St. Peter, which they attacked day and night; whilſt thoſe who were in the caſtle of St. Angelo gave much diſturbance to the Romans. The inhabitants, having ſtrengthened themſelves by many German ſoldiers, collected together, and in one day conquered the village of St. Peter: ſuch Bretons as were able, ſecured themſelves in the caſtle of St. Angelo; but they were ſo much haraſſed, as to ſurrender the caſtle on having their lives ſpared, and retreat towards Fondi, and to the

flat

flat country thereabouts. The Romans diſmantled the caſtle of St. Angelo, and burnt the village of St. Peter.

When ſir Silveſter Budes who was ſtill in that country heard that his people had loſt the village of St. Peter and the caſtle of St. Angelo, he was much vexed, and thought how he could revenge himſelf on the Romans. He learnt from his ſpies, that the principal perſons from the city were to meet in council at the capitol; upon which he planned an enterprize of men at arms, whom he had retained near him, and rode that day through bye roads to Rome, which he entered by the gate leading to Naples. On his arrival, he made directly for the capitol, and came there ſo opportunely that the council had juſt left their hall, and were in the ſquare. Theſe Bretons, couching their ſpears and ſpurring their horſes, charged the Romans full gallop, and ſlew and wounded numbers of the principal perſons of the city. Among thoſe that lay dead in the ſquare were ſeven banners and two hundred other rich men: a great many more were wounded.

When the Bretons had performed this exploit they retreated, as it was evening: they were not purſued, on account of the night, and becauſe the Romans were ſo frightened that they could only attend on their friends. They paſſed the night in great anguiſh of heart, burying the dead, and taking care of the wounded.

The next morning, they bethought themſelves of an act of cruelty, which they put into execution;

they attacked the poor clergy who reſided in Rome, and who had not been guilty of the ſmalleſt fault, ſlew and wounded upwards of three hundred; but, in particular, they ſhewed no mercy to any Bretons who fell into their hands.

In this miſerable ſituation was Rome and its neighbourhood, on account of two popes; and thoſe who had not been any way concerned in the buſineſs paid dearly for it.

Pope Clement and his cardinals reſided at Fondi, where the queen of Naples came to viſit and encourage him; for ſhe and her ſubjects were attached to him as pope, and anxious to ſupport him as ſuch.

The queen of Naples* had entertained an idea for a conſiderable time of ſurrendering the kingdom of Sicily and county of Provence, which were dependencies on her crown, into the hands of the pope, for him to give according to his will, as an inheritance, to any prince of high birth in France, but who muſt have the means of defending her againſt thoſe of the houſe of Hungary, whom ſhe mortally hated.

On the queen's arrival at Fondi, ſhe humbled herſelf before the pope, and, having confeſſed herſelf to him, related all her affairs without diſguiſe, adding; 'Holy father, I poſſeſs ſeveral great and noble inheritances; the kingdoms of Naples and Sicily, la Puglia, Calabria, and the county of Provence. In truth, king Lewis of Sicily, duke of

* The queen of Naples,—the celebrated Joan. Her hiſtory is differently related from Froiſſart's account.

la Puglia and Calabria, my father, during his life-time, acknowledged holding theſe territories from the church, and, taking my hand on his death-bed, ſaid to me; 'My good child, you are heireſs of a very extenſive and rich country; and I believe that many princes will endeavour to obtain you for a wife on account of the handſome territories you will poſſeſs. Now, I would reccommend you to follow my advice, which is, to unite yourſelf with a powerful prince, who will be able to keep your kingdoms in peace; and ſhould it ſo happen that, through God's will, you have not any heirs, yield to whoever may be at the time pope all your territories; for king Robert, my father, ſo charged me on his death-bed, which is the reaſon, my dear daughter, I order you ſo to do, and diſcharge myſelf from it.' Holy father, I promiſed to comply with his wiſhes, and pledged my faith, in the preſence of all who were in the chamber, to fulfil his laſt requeſt.

'In truth, holy father, after his deceaſe, with the conſent of the nobles of Sicily and Naples, I wedded Andrew of Hungary, brother to Lewis king of Hungary, by whom I had not any children; for he died a young man, at Aix in Provence*.

'After his death, they married me to Charles

* She had him murdered, and thrown out of a window at Averſa, where he lay for ſeveral days, and was at laſt interred ſecretly by his nurſe, who was very fond of him, and a canon of St. Januarius, in the cathedral of Naples. The whole tale which ſhe relates is very incorrect.

prince of Taranto, by whom I had a daughter. The king of Hungary, being angry that his brother died, made war on my husband, the lord Charles, and took from him la Puglia and Calabria: he also made him prisoner in battle, carried him to Hungary, where he died during his confinement.

'After this, with the consent of my nobility, I was united to James king of Majorca, who went to France for the lord Louis de Navarre to come and marry my daughter, but he died on the road. The king of Majorca left me with the intention to reconquer his kingdom of Majorca, which the king of Arragon kept from him by force; for he had put his father to death in prison, and disinherited the son. I told the king, my husband, that I was sufficiently rich to maintain him in as pompous a stile as he should please; but he insisted so much, and gave such plausible reasons for recovering his inheritance, that I consented, with a half willing mind, for him to act as he pleased; but, on his departure, I particularly enjoined him to go to king Charles of France, and explain to him his business, and to follow what he should advise: this, however, he totally neglected to do, and ill consequences resulted from it; for he went to the prince of Wales, in whom he had greater confidence than in the king of France, who is my relation, and who promised to assist him in his undertaking.

'However, during the time he was on this expedition, I wrote and sent ambassadors to the king of France, to desire he would send me a nobleman of the blood royal, to whom I might give my daughter, that

that our territories ſhould not be without heirs. The king of France attended to my propoſals, for which I thank him, and ſent me his couſin Robert d'Artois, whom I married to my daughter.

'Holy father, my huſband, the king of Majorca, died during his expedition: I then married the lord Otho of Brunſwick. The lord Charles Durazzo, ſeeing that the lord Otho would enjoy my inheritance during my life, made war upon us, and took us priſoners in the Caſtle del Ovo, when the ſea was ſo high that it ſeemed to cover us. We were all ſo much frightened that we ſurrendered ourſelves, on our lives being ſpared. The lord Charles detained in priſon my huſband, myſelf, my daughter and her huſband ſo long that the two laſt died. We gained our liberty afterwards by a treaty, which gave up to him la Puglia and Calabria; and he now looks to inherit Naples, Sicily and Provence; for which reaſon he ſeeks alliances every where, and will ſet aſide the rights of the church as ſoon as I ſhall be dead, or at leaſt he will do every thing in his power to accompliſh it.

'Wherefore, holy father, as I wiſh to acquit myſelf towards God, you, and the ſouls of my predeceſſors, I now place in your hands all the territories which belong to me, of Sicily, Naples, la Puglia, Calabria and Provence, and give them up to you to diſpoſe of to whomſoever ſhall be to you the moſt agreeable, and who ſhall be able to conquer them from our enemy Charles Durazzo.'

Pope Clement heard this ſpeech with pleaſure, and received the gift in great reverence, replying,

'My

'My daughter of Naples, we will take ſuch meaſures that your territories ſhall have an heir of your noble and powerful blood, and who ſhall be fully able to reſiſt all who may wiſh to oppoſe him.'

Public and authentic acts were drawn up of all theſe gifts, ſo that they might in future eſtabliſh the right, and make every thing clear to thoſe who in times to come may hear of them*.

CHAP. XIX.

POPE CLEMENT GOES TO AVIGNON.—HE MAKES THE DUKE OF ANJOU MAGNIFICENT PRESENTS.—SIR SILVESTER BUDES AND HIS COMPANIONS ARE BEHEADED.

WHEN the queen of Naples and the lord Otho of Brunſwick had concluded with the pope, the object of their journey to Fondi, and had remained there to amuſe themſelves as long as they choſe, they took leave, and returned to Naples. Pope Clement thought it would not be for his advantage to remain longer ſo near Rome. Having learnt that Urban and the Romans were labouring hard to gain the love of the Neapolitans and the lord Charles Durazzo, he was alarmed leſt the roads to Avignon ſhould be ſo blocked up by ſea and land that he would not get thither, which he was very deſirous to accompliſh.

* For further accounts of her life, See Bayle's dictionary.

What

What made him the more eager to arrive at Avignon was his wiſh to preſent as a gift, without prejudice or violation, thoſe rights which the queen of Naples had given him over the kingdoms of Naples and Sicily, to the duke of Anjou, and which had been legally ſigned and ſealed.

He therefore prudently arranged his affairs in ſecret, and embarked on board the galleys which had been ſent from Arragon, attended by his cardinals and their families: having favourable winds, they arrived, without accident, at Marſeilles, to the great joy of the people in thoſe parts: thence the pope went to Avignon, and ſent information of his arrival to the king of France and his brothers, who were much pleaſed thereat.

The duke of Anjou who at that time reſided at Toulouſe, waited on him. The pope, immediately on his arrival, preſented him with all thoſe powers with which the queen of Naples had inveſted him.

The duke of Anjou, who was ever ambitious to be poſſeſſed of honours and large poſſeſſions, received theſe gifts moſt gratefully, and accepted them for himſelf and his heirs, telling his holineſs, that as ſoon as he was able, he would viſit thoſe countries with ſuch a force as ſhould enable him to reſiſt all the enemies of the queen of Naples. The duke remained with the pope about fifteen days, and then returned to Toulouſe to the ducheſs and his children. The pope gave the command of his men at arms to ſir Bernard de la Salle and to Florimond Guerrier.

At this period, there was in Tuſcany a right valiant

liant Engliſh knight, called ſir John Hawkwood*, who had there performed many moſt gallant deeds of arms; he had left France at the concluſion of the peace of Bretigny, and was at that time a poor knight, who thought it would not be of any advantage to him to return home; but when he ſaw, that by the treaties, all men at arms would be forced to leave France, he put himſelf at the head of thoſe free companions called Late-comers, and marched into Burgundy. Several ſuch companions, compoſed of Engliſh, Gaſcons, Bretons, Germans, and of men from every nation, were collected there. Hawkwood was one of the principal leaders, with Bricquet and Carnelle, by whom the battle of Brignais was fought, and who aided Bernard de la Salle to take the Pont du St. Eſprit.

When they had haraſſed the country for ſome time, the marquis de Montferrat made a treaty with them to aſſiſt him in his war with the lords of Milan. This marquis led them over the Alps, after he had paid them ſixty thouſand francs, of which Hawkwood received, for himſelf and his troops, ten thouſand.

When they had finiſhed the war for the marquis, the greater part of them returned to France; for ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, the lords de la Marche, de Beaujeau, and ſir Arnold d'Andreghen marſhal

* Sir John Hawkwood. For an account of him, ſee vol. vi. of the Bibliotheca Topographica Britannica, where there is a life of him, his engraved portrait and tomb. See alſo Mr. Shepherd's Life of Poggio Bracciolini.

of

of France, wiſhed to lead them into Spain, to don Henry de Traſtamare; againſt don Pedro king of Spain!

Sir John Hawkwood and his companions remained in Italy, and were employed by pope Urban as long as he lived in his wars in the Milaneſe. Pope Grogory, ſucceſſor to Urban, engaged him in the ſame manner.

Sir John had alſo a profitable employment, under the lord de Coucy, againſt the count de Vertus and his barons; in which, ſome ſay, the lord de Coucy would have been ſlain, if ſir John Hawkwood had not come to his aſſiſtance with five hundred combatants, which he was ſolely induced to do becauſe the lord de Coucy had married one of the king of England's daughters. This ſir John Hawkwood was a knight much inured to war, which he had long followed, and had gained great renown in Italy from his gallantry.

The Romans, therefore, and Urban, who called himſelf pope, reſolved, on Clement leaving Italy, to ſend for Hawkwood, and appoint him commander in chief of all their forces: they made him large offers of retaining him and his whole troop at a handſome ſubſidy, which he accepted, and acquitted himſelf loyally for it.

In company with the Romans, he defeated a large body of Bretons under the command of Silveſter Budes; the greater part of whom were either ſlain or taken: Silveſter Budes was carried priſoner to Rome, where he was in great danger of being beheaded. To ſay the truth, it would have been

been more for his honour, and for that of his friend, had he been ſo the day he was brought there; for he and another ſquire of Brittany, called William Boileau, were afterwards beheaded in the city of Maſcon by order of pope Clement. They were ſuſpected of treachery, on account of having eſcaped from the priſons in Rome, no one knew how, and had come to Avignon, where they were arreſted.

The cardinal of Amiens was the author of their arreſt; for he hated them ever ſince the wars in Italy, when they had killed ſome of his baggage-horſes, and ſeized a large quantity of money and gold and ſilver plate, which Silveſter had diſtributed among his followers, by way of pay, being unable otherwiſe to ſatisfy them. The cardinal was much enraged at this conduct, and ſecretly charged them with treaſon. On their arrival at Avignon, they were ſeized, and accuſed of treacherouſly intending to betray the pope: they were then ſent to Maſcon, when both were inſtantly beheaded.

In this ſtate were affairs in thoſe diſtant countries. Sir Bertrand du Gueſclin was indignant againſt the pope and cardinals on account of the death of his couſin Silveſter Budes; and, if he had lived a little longer, he would have ſhewn, or have cauſed it to have been ſhewn them, that it was very diſpleaſing to him.

We will, for the preſent, leave theſe matters, and ſpeak of the war in Flanders, which began about this time. The people were very murderous and cruel, and multitudes were ſlain or driven out of the

the country. The country itſelf was ſo much ruined that it was ſaid a hundred years would not reſtore it to the ſituation it was in before the war.

CHAP. XX.

THE STATE OF FLANDERS BEFORE THE WAR.—THE CAUSES OF THE DISPUTES BETWEEN THE EARL OF FLANDERS AND THE FLEMINGS.—JOHN LYON INTRODUCES THE DISTINCTION OF WHITE HOODS.

BEFORE the commencement of theſe wars in Flanders, the country was ſo fertile, and every thing in ſuch abundance, that it was marvellous to ſee; and the inhabitants of the principal towns lived in very grand ſtate.

You muſt know, that this war originated in the pride and hatred that ſeveral of the chief towns bore to each other: thoſe of Ghent againſt thoſe of Bruges, and others in like manner, vying with each other through envy. However, this could not have created a war without the conſent of their lord the earl of Flanders, who was ſo much loved and feared that no one dared to anger him.

The earl, being wiſe and prudent, carefully avoided encouraging a war between his vaſſals; for he foreſaw, that if any difference ſhould ariſe between him and them, he would be much weakened and leſs formidable to his neighbours. He carefully avoided war for another reaſon, conſidering it as deſtructive

deſtructive to all poſſeſſions, although at laſt he was forced to it! he had hitherto reigned in great proſperity and peace, and had as many pleaſures and enjoyments as any earthly lord can have.

The wars which enſued were cauſed by ſo trifling an event, that if the earl had poſſeſſed any prudence, it ought not to have produced that effect; and thoſe who read this book, or who may have it read to them, will ſay, that it was the work of the devil. You know wiſe men think the devil, who is ſubtle and full of artifice, labours night and day to cauſe warfare wherever he finds peace and harmony, and ſeeks by diſtant means, and by degrees, how to accompliſh his ends. And thus it fell out in Flanders, as you will clearly ſee and learn from the different treaties and ordinances which follow relative to theſe matters.

During the time that earl Lewis of Flanders was in his greateſt proſperity, there was a citizen of Ghent called John Lyon: he was wiſe, ſubtle and bold, but cruel, enterpriſing and cool in buſineſs, and very much in favour with the earl, as it ſhould ſeem; for he employed him to aſſaſſinate, in a ſecret way, a man of Ghent, that was diſagreeable to him, and who acted contrary to the wiſhes of the earl. John Lyon ſought a quarrel with him, and killed him.

This man was greatly lamented by all; and, for grief of what he had done, John Lyon went and reſided at Douay, where he lived for three years, keeping a handſome ſtate, for which the earl paid.

John Lyon, on account of this murder, was inſtantly

ſtantly deprived of every thing he had in the city of Ghent, and baniſhed from it for four years,

The earl managed ſo as to make up the matter and recover for him the freedom he had loſt of Ghent, which was a circumſtance not before heard of, and ſeveral in Ghent and Flanders were much aſtoniſhed at it, but ſo it happened. In addition to this, the earl, that he might enrich himſelf and live well, made him deacon of the pilots: this office might be worth to him a thouſand francs a-year, doing honeſtly his duty. Thus was John Lyon ſo much in the good graces of the earl that no one was equal to him.

At this time, there was a family in Ghent called the Matthews: they were ſeven brothers, and the moſt conſiderable of all the pilots. Among theſe ſeven brothers was one named Gilbert Matthew, who was rich, wiſe, ſubtle, and more enterprizing than any of his family. This Gilbert bore in ſecret a great hatred to John Lyon, becauſe he ſaw him ſo much in favour with the earl; and he occupied his thoughts, day and night, how he could ſupplant him. He ſometimes inclined to have him ſlain by his brothers, but gave it up for fear of the earl. He thought ſo much on this ſubject that at laſt he hit upon a plan to accompliſh it: however, I will firſt tell you the real cauſe why they hated each other, that you may the more fully underſtand it.

There exiſted formerly, in the town of Deynſe, a mortal hatred between two pilots and their families: one was called Peter Guillon, and the other

John Barbé. Gilbert Matthew and his brothers were connected by blood to one of theſe families, and John Lyon, by ſimilar ties, to the other. This hatred was for a long time nouriſhed in ſecret, though they ſometimes ſpoke, and even eat and drank with each other; and Gilbert made more of this connection than John Lyon did. Gilbert, without ſtriking a blow, bethought himſelf of a cunning contrivance.

The earl of Flanders reſided ſometimes at Ghent: Gilbert, during theſe reſidences, got acquainted with one of the earl's chamberlains, who was attached to his perſon, and ſaid to him; 'If my lord of Flanders pleaſed, he might gain, every year, a handſome revenue from the pilots, who now pay nothing: it might be levied on the foreign trade, provided John Lyon, who is deacon of the pilots, would acquit himſelf honeſtly.' The chamberlain ſaid he would inform the earl of it, which he did. The earl (like other great lords, who naturally wiſh for gain, and who do not foreſee the conſequences, but only ſeek to get the money into their hands) told his chamberlain to bring Gilbert Matthew to him, and he would hear what he had to ſay.

Gilbert was introduced, and, in converſation, made uſe of ſuch arguments as appeared reaſonable to the earl, who replied, 'It is well: let it be ſo.'

John Lyon was immediately called into the apartment, in preſence of Gilbert Matthew, quite ignorant of what had paſſed, when the earl opened the buſineſs to him, and added, 'John, if you chooſe, we may gain much wealth by this ſcheme.'

John

John was indeed loyal in his employment; but ſaw this was not a reaſonable demand: being unwilling to ſpeak to the contrary, he replied 'My lord, what you have required, which it ſeems Gilbert has propoſed, I cannot execute myſelf, for it will be too heavy upon the mariners.'

'John,' anſwered the earl, 'if you will exert yourſelf, the buſineſs will be done.'

'My lord,' replied John, 'I will then do every thing in my power.'

The conference broke up, when Gilbert Matthew (whoſe only aim was to ruin John Lyon in the mind of the earl, to deprive him of his office, ſo that, being turned out, it might profit him) went to his ſix brothers, and ſaid to them; 'It is now time to aſſiſt me, which I hope you will do, like good friends and brothers, for it is your cauſe I am fighting. I will diſcomfit John Lyon without ſtriking a blow, and ſo ruin him in the opinion of the earl that he ſhall be more diſliked by the earl than he had before been liked. Now, notwithſtanding all I may ſay or argue at the meeting to be holden, you muſt refuſe to comply: I will diſſemble, and argue that if John Lyon would faithfully acquit himſelf, this ordinance would be obeyed. I know ſo well our lord, that ſooner than give up his point, John Lyon will loſe his favour, as well as his office, which will be given to me; and, when I am in the poſſeſſion of it you will comply with the demand. We are very powerful with the mariners of this town, ſo that none of them will dare oppoſe us. I will afterwards ſo manage

that John Lyon ſhall be ſlain, and we have our revenge without appearing in the matter.'

All his brethren complied with this requeſt. The meeting was held of the mariners, when John Lyon and Gilbert Matthew explained the will of the earl, who propoſed, by a new ſtatute, to lay a tax on the navigation of the Lys and the Scheld. It appeared very burdenſome, and too great a ſtretch of power, particularly to the ſix brothers of Gilbert, who were more firm and unanimous in their oppoſition to it than all the reſt. John Lyon, their deacon, was ſecretly rejoiced at this; for he was deſirous of maintaining all their ancient rights and privileges, and flattered himſelf that the brothers were in his favour, while they were acting juſt the contrary.

John Lyon reported to the earl the anſwer of the mariners, adding, 'My lord, it is a thing which cannot be done: much evil may reſult from it: let things remain as they are, and do not attempt to introduce any novelties.' This anſwer was not very pleaſing to the earl, for he perceived that if the impoſt were laid, and collected in the manner he had been told, he ſhould have received every year from ſix to ſeven thouſand florins of revenue: he therefore made no reply, but did not think leſs upon it, and had thoſe mariners whom John Lyon found rebellious ſued by actions and otherwiſe.

On the other hand, Gilbert Matthew came to the earl and his council, to ſay that John Lyon did not act well in this buſineſs; that if he had his office, he would ſo manage the mariners that the earl of Flanders ſhould have this revenue hereditarily.

The

The earl did not ſee clear, for this revenue, with his avarice, blinded him; and, without aſking for advice, he deprived John Lyon of his office, which he gave to Gilbert. When Gilbert thus ſaw himſelf deacon of the pilots, he turned his brothers according to his will, and gave the earl ſatisfaction in regard to this impoſt, for which he was not the more beloved by the majority of the mariners; but they were forced to ſubmit, for the ſeven brothers, aſſiſted by the earl, were too many for them, and it behoved them to do ſo in ſilence.

Thus did Gilbert Matthew, by this wary method, carry his point, and obtain the favour of the earl of Flanders. Gilbert made very handſome preſents to the officers and chamberlains of the earl; by which means he blinded them, and gained their friendſhip. All theſe fine gifts were paid for by the mariners, which diſſatisfied many, but they dared not complain.

John Lyon, by the above mentioned means and intrigues of Gilbert, entirely loſt the good graces of the earl; he lived quietly on his fortune, ſuffering patiently whatever was done to him. Gilbert, being now deacon, and ſecretly hating John Lyon, took away from him a third or fourth of the profits which were his due from the navigation. John Lyon did not ſay one word, but, prudently diſſembling, and with an apparently good will, took whatever they gave him; for, he ſaid, there were times when it was better to be ſilent than to talk.

Gilbert Matthew had a brother named Stephen, a cunning fellow, who had watched all the actions

of John Lyon: he ſaid to his brothers (for he prophecied to them all that was to happen); 'Certainly, gentlemen, John Lyon ſuffers at this moment, and keeps his head very low; but he acts with good ſenſe, and will contrive to throw us as low as we are now high. I will give you one piece of advice, which is, to kill him while we continue in the favour of my lord the earl: I can very eaſily do it, if you charge me with this buſineſs, by which we ſhall eſcape all the danger, and can eaſily get acquitted for his death.'

His brothers refuſed to conſent to this, ſaying he had not done them any wrong, and that no man ought to loſe his life but by the ſentence of a judge.

Things remained in this ſituation for ſome time, when the devil, who never ſleeps, put it into the heads of the people of Burges to make a canal from the river Lys: the earl agreed in their plans, and ſent a number of pioneers, with a body of men at arms to guard them. They had in former times attempted to do this, but the citizens of Ghent had by force made them deſiſt.

News was brought to Ghent, that the inhabitants of Bruges were now intending to carry by force their old ſcheme of making a canal to obtain the waters of the Lys, which would be very prejudicial to them; ſo that great murmurs aroſe in Ghent, more particularly among the mariners, who were much affected by it. They ſaid, that the people of Bruges ſhould not thus make a canal to draw off the courſe of the river, as it would be the ruin of the town. Some others ſaid, in an under-

hand

hand manner, 'Now God ſave John Lyon! had he been our deacon, ſuch an attempt would not have been made, nor the people of Bruges have had the courage to have undertaken this buſineſs.'

John Lyon was duly informed of all theſe things: he began to awaken, ſaying, 'I have for ſome time ſlept; but it ſeems that this trifling affair in appearance has rouſed me, and ſhall create ſuch troubles between this town and the earl as will coſt a hundred thouſand lives.'

Intelligence of theſe diggers was brought, with great additions, that much inflamed men's minds; for it chanced, that a woman on her return from a pilgrimage to our Lady of Boulogne, being weary, ſeated herſelf in the market-place, where there were crowds of people. They aſked her, where ſhe came from: ſhe ſaid, 'From Boulogne; and I have ſeen in my road the greateſt curſe that can ever befal the town of Ghent: for there are upwards of five hundred diggers, who are labouring day and night to open a courſe for the Lys; and, if they be not immediately prevented, they will turn to their town the current of that river.'

This ſpeech of the woman was heard, and repeated in different parts of the town. The townſmen roſe, and ſaid, ſuch things were not to be ſuffered nor borne quietly. Many of them went to John Lyon to aſk advice in the matter, and how they ſhould act.

When John Lyon ſaw himſelf thus appealed to by thoſe whoſe love and favour and wiſhed to gain, he was much rejoiced, but took care not to ſhew

any ſigns of it; for it would not be a fit opportunity until the buſineſs ſhould be more fully aſcertained: he therefore made them greatly entreat him before he would ſpeak, or give any opinion on the ſubject. When he was prevailed on to ſpeak, he ſaid; 'Gentlemen, if you wiſh to riſk this buſineſs, and put an end to it, you muſt renew an ancient cuſtom that formerly ſubſiſted in the town of Ghent: I mean, you muſt firſt put on white hoods, and chooſe a leader, to whom every one may look, and rally at his ſignal.'

This harangue was eagerly liſtened to, and they all cried out, 'We will have it ſo, we will have it ſo! now let us put on white hoods.'

White hoods were directly made, and given out to thoſe among them who loved war better than peace, and had nothing to loſe. John Lyon was elected chief of the white hoods.

He very willingly accepted of this office, to revenge himſelf on his enemies, to embroil the towns of Ghent and Bruges with each other, and with the earl their lord. He was ordered, as their chief, to march againſt the pioneers and diggers from Bruges, and had with him two hundred ſuch people as preferred rioting to quiet.

When Gilbert Matthew and his brothers ſaw the numbers of theſe white hoods, they were not too well pleaſed: Stephen ſaid to his brothers, 'Did not I well forewarn you, that this John Lyon would diſcomfit us? It would have been better if I had been believed, and had been allowed to have killed him, than to have ſeen in him the ſituation

he

he is in, or will be, through theſe white hoods which he has re-eſtabliſhed.'

'No, no,' replied Gilbert, 'let me but ſpeak with my lord, and they ſhall be put down. I am willing they ſhould accompliſh their enterprize againſt the pioneers from Bruges, for the good of our town; for, in truth, it will be completely ruined, if they be ſuffered to proceed.'

John Lyon and his rout, when they had all their white hoods, marched from Ghent, with the intention of killing the diggers and thoſe who guarded them. News was ſoon carried to the pioneers, that a large force from Ghent was coming againſt them: they were ſo much afraid of the conſequences they left their work, and retired to Bruges; and none were bold enough to return to their digging.

John and his white hoods, not ſeeing any one, returned to Ghent: but they did not remain quiet, for they went up and down the town, looking at and examining every thing. John Lyon kept them in this ſtate, and told ſome of them in private to make themſelves comfortable, to eat and drink, and not to mind expenſe; for thoſe ſhould pay their ſcore at a future time who would not now give them a farthing.

CHAP. XXI.

BY THE EXHORTATIONS OF JOHN LYON, THE INHABITANTS OF GHENT SEND SOME OF THEIR PRINCIPAL CITIZENS TO THE EARL OF FLANDERS, TO DEMAND THE PRESERVATION OF THEIR LIBERTIES AND FRANCHISES.—THE EARL REQUESTS THESE CITIZENS TO ABOLISH THE WHITE HOODS.

DURING the time of theſe white hoods, and in the ſame week that they had marched, under the conduct of John Lyon, to Deynſe, in ſearch of the pioneers from Bruges, another cauſe of diſtruſt originated at Ghent, by ſome who were alarmed for its franchiſes: they complained to thoſe who, by the conſtitution, were their magiſtrates, that at Erclo* (a dependance on Ghent) one of their burgeſſes was confined in the priſons of the earl, and that they had ſummoned the bailiff of the earl to ſurrender him up, but he had refuſed, which was directly contrary to their privileges, and thus by little and little they were encroached upon. In former times, they were held ſo high and of ſuch conſequence, and were then ſo well defended, that the nobleſt knight of Flanders thought himſelf honoured by being a burgeſs of Ghent.

The magiſtrates replied, 'We will cheerfully

* Probably Eccloo.

write

write to the bailiff of Ghent on the part of the burgeſs whom he detains in priſon, for him to ſend him to us; for, in truth, the powers of his office do not extend ſo far as to confine one of our burgeſſes in the priſons of the earl.'

They acted accordingly, and wrote to the bailiff for the burgeſs who was priſoner at Erclo. The bailiff, Roger d'Auterme, was adviſed to ſend the following anſwer: 'Ha, what a noiſe is this about a mariner? Were my priſoner ten times as rich as the one I have, I would never let him out of my priſon without orders from the earl. I have powers to arreſt, but none to ſet free.'

This ſpeech was carried back, which gave much diſpleaſure: they ſaid, he had proudly anſwered.

By ſuch replies, and ſuch unlucky accidents as the pioneers from Bruges wanting to dig on the lands of Ghent, and the encroachments on the privileges of Ghent, were that curſed crew called White Hoods introduced, and they became by degrees more feared and renowned. It behoveth ſuch a ſet to have among them madmen and firebrands, to work upon the more peaceable.

This ſtory of the burgeſs of Ghent being detained in the earl's priſon at Erclo, and of the bailiff having refuſed to give him his liberty, was ſoon ſpread through the town of Ghent. Many began to murmur, and to ſay it ought not to be ſuffered; and that, from being too quiet about it, all the franchiſes of Ghent, which were ſo noble, would be loſt.

John Lyon, who only aimed at the embroiling the

the town of Ghent in ſuch a manner with its lord that it would be impoſſible to ſettle it without loſs, was not ſorry when he heard theſe words, and wiſhed they had been ſtill ſtronger: he continued to ſpread ſecret rumours in different parts of the town, 'that never could the juriſdictions or privileges of any town be properly maintained when once offices are put to ſale.' He intended this in alluſion to Gilbert Matthew, meaning to ſay that he had bought the deaconſhip: he had alſo added a new debt to the navigation, which was greatly againſt the franchiſes of Ghent and their ancient privileges.

The earl now received, every year, three or four thouſand francs, beſides what he had from ancient cuſtom, which cauſed many complaints from merchants as well as from the mariners; inſomuch that thoſe of Valenciennes, Douay, Lille, Bethune, and Tournay, began to think of giving up their commerce with Ghent, by which greater ruin would be brought upon the town, and very ſoon their franchiſes would be ſo neglected as to be worth nothing, if no one ſtood forward in the ſupport of them.

Gilbert Matthew and the deacon of the ſmall craft, who was his relation, had ſuch ſpeeches daily rung in their ears: they knew they came from John Lyon, but they dared not attempt to remedy it; for John had poſted white hoods in various parts of the town, and had inliſted among them the boldeſt and moſt outrageous, ſo that they were afraid to attack them: beſides, John Lyon never went

went abroad alone, for when he quitted his houſe he was ſurrounded by two or three hundred white hoods, and never went down the town but in caſes of abſolute neceſſity. He always made himſelf be much entreated before he would give any advice on events which happened, at home or abroad, againſt the privileges of the town.

Whenever he did give advice or harangue the people, he ſpoke ſo well, and with ſo much art, that his auditors were highly pleaſed with his language: they commonly were unanimous in believing all he ſpoke as truth.

John Lyon, with much art, thus harangued: 'I do not ſay that we ſhould any way weaken or diminiſh the inheritance of my lord of Flanders; for, if we wiſhed it, we are not able to do it: reaſon and juſtice forbid it. I am, therefore, of opinion, that we ſhould be cautious how by any event we may incur his diſpleaſure; for every ſubject ought to be on good terms with his lord. The earl of Flanders is our good lord, much feared and renowned: he has always maintained us in full peace and proſperity, which we ſhould ever acknowledge, and endure the more (as we are bounden to do) than if he had haraſſed us, and made it difficult for us to keep our own. True it is, that at this preſent moment, he is wickedly adviſed againſt us and the franchiſes of the good town of Ghent: that we of Ghent are no more in his good graces is apparent by the diggers (he reſiding in Bruges), who came to break in on our inheritance, and carry away our river, by which

meaſure

meaſure our good town would have been quite ruined. In addition to this, he intends to build a caſtle at Deynſe in oppoſition to us and to haraſs us; and we know that the people of Bruges have promiſed him, for ſome time paſt, that they would pay him from ten to twelve thouſand francs a-year, if they could have the advantage of the river Lys. I would therefore adviſe, that the good town of Ghent ſhould ſend to him ſome learned men, well informed of our affairs, who would remonſtrate wiſely and boldly with him on all theſe matters, and alſo reſpecting the burgeſs who is in priſon at Erclo, whom his bailiff will not give up, at which the town is not pleaſed, as well as on other affairs reſpecting our town. After having remonſtrated with him on theſe things, let them inform him, that neither himſelf nor adviſers muſt imagine that we are ſo diſheartened, that, if there ſhould be occaſion, we are not able and determined to reſiſt; and that, after the town ſhall have had his anſwers, the good men of Ghent will take proper meaſures to puniſh thoſe who ſhall act with hoſtility towards them.'

When John Lyon had concluded this oration in the ſquare of the market-place, each man ſaid, 'He has well ſpoken; he has well ſpoken;' and then they all retired to their own homes.

Gilbert Matthew was not preſent at this harangue of John Lyon; for he already was afraid of the white hoods; but his brother, Stephen, had been there, who was ever foretelling what was to happen: he ſaid on his return, 'I have told you truly,

truly, and I have always ſo ſaid, that, by God, John Lyon will be the ruin of us all. Curſed be the hour when you would not conſent to my propoſal; for, had you ſuffered me to have killed him, I could then have eaſily done it; but now he is out of our reach, and we dare not attempt even to hurt him, for he has more power in this town than the earl himſelf.'

Gilbert, replying, ſaid; 'Hold thy tongue, fool: whenever I pleaſe, with the aſſiſtance of my lord I can put down theſe white hoods; and ſome of them who now wear them will not, in a ſhort time, have heads to put them on.'

Several of the moſt diſcreet men of the town were ordered to wait on the earl as ambaſſadors; and I believe that Matthew Gilbert, the deacon of the pilots, was one of thoſe choſen to go thither. John Lyon was the cauſe of this, becauſe, if they ſhould bring back any harſh anſwer, he would ſhare the diſgrace of it.

They departed, and found the earl at Male*, and managed the buſineſs ſo well that at laſt the earl aſſented to all their demands, as well in regard to the priſoner detained at Erclo, as in his intentions to preſerve inviolate all their franchiſes, and alſo in forbidding the people of Bruges ever again to dig on the territories belonging to Ghent. All this he promiſed; and, the more to pleaſe the ci-

* It would ſeem from Bleau's grand atlas, that the domain and park of Male had been drowned by the ſea ſince this time. The earl of Flanders was born there, and thence called Louis de Male.

tizens

tizens of Ghent, he engaged to command the canal which the men of Bruges had dug to be completely filled up again. They quitted the earl very amicably, and returned to Ghent; when they related all that had paſſed with their lord, and how willing he was to maintain all their franchiſes; but he requeſted, as a proof of their friendſhip, that the white hoods ſhould be laid aſide. As theſe words were ſpeaking, the officers of the earl brought in their priſoner from Erclo, and ſurrendered him up, by way of re-eſtabliſhing peace according to the orders they had received, which cauſed great joy in the town of Ghent.

John Lyon the chief of the white hoods, was preſent when the above anſwer was received, attended by ten or twelve of the principal of his rout. When they heard the earl's requeſt for the white hoods to be laid aſide, they were ſilent; but John Lyon addreſſed the meeting, and ſaid, 'My good people, you know and ſee clearly at preſent the value of theſe white hoods: have they not preſerved for you, and do they not guard better your franchiſes, than thoſe of red and black, or hoods of any other colour? Many are they who are afraid of them; but be aſſured, and remember I tell you ſo, that as ſoon as the white hoods ſhall be laid aſide, according to the ordinance which my lord wiſhes to have iſſued againſt them, I will not give three farthings for all your privileges.' This ſpeech ſo deceived the people that they ſeparated, and the greater part returned to their homes, ſaying, 'Let him manage the buſineſs; for he ſpeaks truth,

truth, and we have never ſeen any thing in him but what was for the advantage and honour of the town.'

Things remained in this ſtate, and John Lyon in greater danger of his life than before: upon which he formed a plan, which he afterwards executed; for he clearly ſaw that Gilbert Matthew had, in this embaſſay to the earl, inſtigated ſome miſchief againſt him and his companions, notwithſtanding the friendly anſwers which the earl had ſent. He therefore reſolved to counterwork his enemies, and gave ſecret orders to the leaders of the white hoods, and to thoſe who commanded the companies of hundreds and of fifties, to keep their men day and night on their guard well armed, and, on the firſt appearance of any movement, to march to him; for it would be better to kill than to be killed, ſince affairs were brought to ſuch a paſs.

Theſe orders were punctually obſerved, and they were exact in keeping themſelves in readineſs.

CHAP. XXII.

THE WHITE HOODS MURDER THE BAILIFF OF GHENT IN THE MIDST OF THE MARKET.—THE HOUSES AND GOODS OF THE FAMILY OF THE MATTHEWS ARE DESTROYED.—A GRAND CONFUSION IN GHENT.

NOT long afterwards, the bailiff of Ghent, Roger d'Auterme, came to town with full two hundred horſe, in order to execute what had been planned between the earl, Gilbert Matthew and his brothers.

The bailiff, with his two hundred men, galloped up the ſtreets, with the banner of the earl in his hand unto the market-place, where he halted, and poſted his banner before him. Gilbert Matthew, his brothers, and the deacon of the ſmall craft, immediately went thither. It had been determined that theſe men at arms ſhould march inſtantly to the houſe of John Lyon, and arreſt him as chief of the white hoods, with ſix or ſeven others, the moſt culpable, carry them to the caſtle of Ghent, and immediately cut their heads off.

John Lyon ſuſpected ſome ſuch thing; for he had received ſecret intelligence from his ſpies, ſcattered over different parts of the town. He knew of the arrival of the bailiff, and ſaw it was a thing determined upon. The other white hoods were

were informed that this day had been fixed on to arreſt them, and were therefore ready prepared and aſſembled near the houſe of John Lyon, who was waiting for them: they came in bands of ten and twenty, and, as they marched up, they formed in the ſtreet: when they were all aſſembled, they were full four hundred. John Lyon marched off as fierce as a lion, ſaying, 'Let us advance againſt theſe traitors, who wiſh to ruin the town of Ghent. I thought all thoſe fine ſpeeches which Gilbert Matthew brought back the other day were only meant for our deſtruction, and to lull us aſleep; but we will make him pay dearly for them.'

He and his rout advanced haſtily: they increaſed very much by the way; for there were thoſe who joined him that had not as yet put on the white hoods, who cried out, 'Treaſon! treaſon!'

They marched, by a roundabout way and a narrow ſtreet, to the corn market, where the bailiff, who repreſented the earl, had poſted himſelf.

Gilbert Matthew and his brethren, the moment they ſaw John Lyon and the white hoods enter the market-place, left the bailiff, and ran away as faſt as they could; and neither order nor array was obſerved, except by the men at arms whom the bailiff had brought thither.

Immediately on the arrival of John Lyon in the market-place, with the white hoods, a large body of them advanced towards the bailiff; and, without ſaying a word, he was ſeized, thrown on the ground and ſlain. The banner of the earl was then dragged through the dirt, and torn to pieces;

but not one man, except the bailiff, was touched. They then collected round John Lyon.

When the earl's men at arms ſaw the bailiff dead, and their banner torn to pieces, they were thunderſtruck, and, like men defeated, took to flight, and left the town.

You may eaſily imagine that Gilbert Matthew and his brethren, who were known to be the enemies of John Lyon and the white hoods, did not think themſelves very ſafe in their houſes: they therefore ſet out as ſpeedily as they could, and quitted the town through bye ſtreets, leaving their wives, children and goods behind them. They made what haſte they could to the earl of Flanders, to whom they related all that had happened, and the death of his bailiff.

The earl was ſorely afflicted at this intelligence, as well he might, for they had treated him with great contempt: he was much enraged, and ſwore that he would have ample revenge before he ever returned to Ghent, and before they ſhould have peace from him, ſo that all other towns ſhould take an example from it. Gilbert Matthew and his brothers remained with the earl.

John Lyon and the white hoods perſevered in their outrages: after the death of the bailiff, and the flight of the men at arms, as no one offered to revenge this murder, John, who wiſhed to ruin the Matthews (for he bore them deadly hatred), ſaid, 'Come, let us go after thoſe wicked traitors who this day intended to have deſtroyed the town of Ghent.' They haſtened down the ſtreets to the

reſidence

reſidence of the Matthews, but found none; for they had all gone off. They were ſought for in every room throughout the houſes of the adjoining ſtreets; and, when they were convinced they were gone, John Lyon was much vexed. He gave up to his companions all their goods, when the houſes were completely pillaged and razed to the ground, ſo that no veſtige remained, as if they had been traitors to the whole body of the town.

When they had done this deed, they retired to their homes; nor was there a ſheriff, or any other officer belonging to the earl or to the town, who ſaid they had acted wrong: indeed, at that time all were afraid to ſay a word againſt them: for the white hoods were ſo numerous that none dared to provoke them, and they paraded the ſtreets in large bodies without any oppoſition. It was ſaid both within and without the town, that they were connected with ſome of the ſheriffs and rich men in Ghent, which was not unlikely; for ſuch a ruffianly crew would never have dared to ſlay ſo noble a man as Roger d'Auterme, bailiff of Ghent, holding the banner of the earl in his hand at the time, if they had not depended on ſome good and able ſupporters in their wicked acts. They afterwards increaſed ſo much as to want no foreign aid, and became ſo powerful that none were bold enough to oppoſe any thing they thought proper to undertake.

Roger d'Auterme was carried away by the Friar Minors to their church, where he was by them buried.

After this event, ſeveral of the wiſeſt and richeſt citizens in Ghent began to murmur, and were much vexed: they ſaid among themſelves, that a great outrage had been committed when the earl's bailiff had thus been murdered in the execution of his office; and that their lord would be juſtly offended, and never grant them peace: that theſe wicked people had put the town to the hazard of being totally deſtroyed, if God did not ſpeedily afford a remedy.

Notwithſtanding all theſe words, there was not one among them who had courage perſonally to correct or reprove the authors of theſe atrocities.

John de Faucille, who at that time was a man much renowned for his wiſdom in Ghent, on finding things carried to ſuch lengths as the murdering of the earl's bailiff, thought it muſt end badly; that he might not be ſuſpected by the earl, he left the town privately, and went to a handſome country-houſe which he had near Ghent, and there remained, having given orders to tell every one he was very unwell and melancholy, and could ſee none but his own people. Every day, however, he had news from Ghent; for he had left there the greater part of his family, his wife, his children and his friends; and thus he diſſembled for a conſiderable time.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

TWELVE CITIZENS OF GHENT ARE DEPUTED TO THE EARL OF FLANDERS.—THE WHITE HOODS PILLAGE AND BURN THE CASTLE OF ANDREGHIEN*, OF WHICH THE EARL WAS VERY FOND.

THE good people of Ghent, who were rich and induſtrious, and had wives, families and fortunes in the town and neighbourhood, wiſhing as they did to live in an honourable way, were not well pleaſed to ſee things in this ſituation, and were very ſenſible how ill they had acted towards their lord: they therefore conſulted among themſelves how they could beſt remedy this ill deed, and throw themſelves on his mercy, for it was better to do ſo ſoon than late. They called a council, in which it was debated what moſt profitable means they could uſe to ſave their own honours, and to promote the advantage of the town. John Lyon and the other leaders of the white hoods were invited to this council; otherwiſe they would not have dared to have holden it.

Many propoſals were made, and long debates enſued; but at laſt they determined unanimouſly to elect twelve of the moſt reſpectable of the inhabitants, who ſhould ſolicit mercy and pardon for

* Q. if not Adeghem, which is near Eccloo.

the murder of the bailiff: and if by this they could obtain peace, it would be a good thing; but every perſon muſt be included in this peace, and nothing moved in the buſineſs hereafter.

This reſolution was acted upon, and twelve citizens elected to wait on the earl. John Lyon kept always ſaying, that it was right to be on good terms with their lord; but his wiſhes were juſt the contrary, for he thought and ſaid internally, 'Things are not yet in the ſituation I wiſh to put them in.'

The determination of the council ſoon became public: the twelve deputies ſet off, and journeyed on until they came to Male, where they found the earl, who on their approach was wondrous angry, and in a cruel paſſion againſt the inhabitants of Ghent. The twelve deputies acted well their parts by appearing contrite, and, with uplifted hands, entreated him to have pity on them. They pleaded their excuſe for the death of his bailiff, adding; 'Dear lord, have mercy on us, ſo that we may carry peace back to the town of Ghent, which loves you ſo much; and we engage, that for the time to come, this outrage ſhall be amply atoned for by thoſe who have done it or excited it, ſo that you ſhall be ſatisfied, and that all large towns ſhall take example from it.'

They ſo long and affectionately ſolicited the earl that he reſtrained his anger; and, by other good arguments which they urged, the affair was arranged and articles of peace drawn up. The earl was on the point of pardoning all the outrages committed againſt him by thoſe of Ghent, on their making

making the reparation agreed on, when other intelligence arrived that I will now relate.

John Lyon, who had remained at Ghent, thought directly the reverſe of what he had ſaid in the council, that it was proper to be on good terms with their lord. He knew for a certainty he had already ſo much irritated the earl, that he would never forgive him, and if his pardon were promiſed, it would be through diſſimulation, which would end in his being put to death. He therefore choſe rather to throw aſide all ſhame, ſince he had entered ſo far in the buſineſs, than to continue daily in the fear of his life; and thus he acted. During the time the deputation was gone to the earl to ſolicit peace, he collected all the white hoods under his command, and the different handicrafts in the town the moſt inclined to his way of thinking, and gained his end by great artifice; for, when they were aſſembled, he ſaid to them;

'Gentlemen, you well know how much we have angered my lord of Flanders, and upon what grounds we have ſent a deputation to him. We do not know what anſwer they will bring back; whether peace or war; for he is not of a temper eaſily appeaſed, and he has near his perſon Gilbert Matthew and his brethren, who will not fail to excite his anger. It is, therefore, a hundred to one that we have peace. It behoves us, if we ſhould have war, to look to ourſelves, and ſee from whom we may get aſſiſtance, and by whom we may be ſupported. You, deacons of the different trades,

do

do you draw out into the fields to-morrow your men; and we will ſee what appearance they make; for it is proper we take meaſures againſt a ſurpriſe. This will not coſt us any thing, and will make us more feared.'

They all anſwered, that he had well ſpoken. This meaſure was followed; and, on the morrow, they marched out of the gate leading to Bruges, and drew up in a handſome plain without Ghent, called Andreghien. When they were all arrived, John Lyon looked at them with great pleaſure; for they were full ten thouſand, well armed; and ſaid, 'Here is indeed a handſome company.' When he had examined them for a ſhort ſpace, and had been all round them, he added: "'I would propoſe that we viſit my lord's houſe, ſince we are ſo near to it. I have been told that he has laid therein many ſtores and proviſions, which may be of great prejudice to the town of Ghent.'

This was agreed to; and they marched to Andreghien, which at the time was without guards or defence. They entered the houſe, and began to ſearch it every where. The white hoods and their ribbald crew which had entered, very ſoon deſpoiled it, taking away whatever they could lay their hands on. There were many rich jewels and clothes, for the earl kept there his wardrobe. John Lyon affected to be in a violent paſſion at this conduct, but was not ſo in reality, as it afterwards appeared; for, after they had left the caſtle and marched into the plain, on looking behind them, they

they ſaw the manſion in flames in twenty different places; and, if they had entertained the inclination, it was not in their power to extinguiſh it.

John Lyon, who pretended to be much ſurpriſed, cried out, 'How has this fire happened in my lord's houſe?' They anſwered, 'By accident.'

'Well,' replied he, 'it cannot now be helped; and it is ſtill better that accident ſhould have burnt it, than that we ſhould. Every thing conſidered, it was but a dangerous neighbour; and my lord might have eſtabliſhed a garriſon therein, which would have annoyed us much.' They all anſwered, 'What you ſay is true.'

They then returned to Ghent, and did nothing more that day; but what they had done was miſchief enough, for it coſt afterwards two hundred thouſand lives, and was one of the principal cauſes which enraged the earl of Flanders the moſt. John Lyon had done it, becauſe he wiſhed not for peace: he well knew, that whatever treaty was entered into, it would be ſealed with his blood.

This caſtle of Andreghien had coſt the earl of Flanders, in building and ornamenting, two hundred thouſand francs; and he loved it in preference to all his other reſidences. The well-intentioned inhabitants of Ghent, who were deſirous of peace, were exceedingly hurt at this buſineſs; but help it they could not, nor did they dare to ſhew any ſymptoms of anger, for the white hoods ſaid the caſtle had been burnt accidentally.

News of this was brought to the earl at Male: thoſe who came ſaid; 'My lord, you do not know that

that your beautiful houſe of Andreghien, which has coſt you ſuch ſums to build, and of which you are ſo fond, is burnt to the ground.' 'Burnt?' replied the earl, who was much enraged at this intelligence. 'Yes; help me, God, if it be not true.' 'And by what means?' 'By an accidental fire, as they ſay.' 'Ha, ha,' anſwered the earl, 'now it is all over: there ſhall never be peace in Flanders as long as John Lyon lives: he has had this houſe burnt in an underhand manner, but he ſhall dearly pay for it.' He then ordered the deputation from Ghent to come to him, and ſaid; 'Ah wretches! you ſupplicate my favour with ſword in hand. I had acceded to every propoſal you had made, according to your wiſh; and your people have ſet fire to and burnt the houſe I loved in preference to all my others. Do you think there had not been ſufficient contempt ſhewn me when they murdered my bailiff, while he was executing my orders, tore my banner, and trod it under foot? Know, that if my own honour were not concerned, and if you had not already obtained paſſports from me, I would now have you all beheaded. Quit my preſence, and tell thoſe wicked and outrageous men of Ghent, that they ſhall never have peace, nor will I liſten to any negotiation, until I ſhall have given up to me all thoſe whom I ſhall point out, and whom I will have beheaded without mercy.'

Theſe citizens were exceedingly hurt at the news they heard, and, like people who were perfectly innocent, endeavoured to excuſe themſelves; but in vain, for the earl was ſo much enraged he would

would not hear them: he made them leave his preſence, when they mounted their horſes and returned to Ghent, and there related what they had done, and how well they had managed the buſineſs; that they had ſucceeded in obtaining an amicable ſettlement with the earl, when the unfortunate event of the caſtle being burnt came to his ears. After this, the earl threatened them greatly, and declared he would never conſent to any peace until ſuch of the townſmen as he ſhould chooſe were given up to him.

The well-meaning inhabitants ſaw things were taking a bad turn, and that the white hoods had ruined all; but there were none bold enough to ſpeak out.

The earl of Flanders ſet off with his attendants from Male, and came to his hôtel at Lille, whither he ſummoned all the knights of Flanders, and every gentleman dependant on him, to have their advice how he ſhould act on this occaſion, and by what means he ſhould revenge himſelf on the inhabitants of Ghent for the contempt they had ſhewn. All the gentlemen of Flanders ſwore to be true and loyal to him, as every one ought to be towards their lord. The earl was much pleaſed at this, and ſent reinforcements to the garriſons in all his caſtles at Dendremonde, Ruſſelmonde, Aloſt, at Courtray and Audenarde.

CHAP. XXIV.

THE DEATH OF JOHN LYON.--THE MEN OF GHENT CHOOSE CAPTAINS TO COMMAND THEM.--SEVERAL TOWNS IN FLANDERS ALLY THEMSELVES WITH GHENT.

JOHN Lyon was rejoiced when he found the earl of Flanders in earneſt, and ſo much enraged againſt Ghent that he would not grant them peace; and that, by his manœuvres, he had puſhed matters ſo forward that the town would be obliged to make war whether it would or not. He ſaid publicly; 'You hear, gentlemen, how our lord, the earl of Flanders, is making preparations againſt you, and will not liſten to any terms of peace: I therefore would adviſe, for greater ſecurity, that before we ſhall be more oppreſſed, we know what towns of Flanders will give us their ſupport. I will anſwer for thoſe of Gramont not being againſt us, but on the contrary they will aſſiſt us, as well as thoſe of Courtray, which is in our caſtlewick, and within our juriſdiction. But as for thoſe of Bruges, they are proud and haughty, and it has been by their means all this miſchief has been fomented: it therefore becomes us to march againſt them, in ſuch force, that through fair or foul means, they unite themſelves with us.' All preſent anſwered, that his advice was good.

In courſe of time, every one that was to go on this

this expedition made himſelf ready. When they were all duly prepared, in a manner becoming them, they marched from Ghent, in number from nine to ten thouſand men, carrying with them a large train of ſtores and proviſion. The firſt day, they halted at Deynſe: on the morrow, they advanced within a ſhort league of Bruges, when they drew up in order of battle, in the plain, with their baggage in the rear. John Lyon ordered the deacons of the trades to go into Bruges, and know their intentions. They advanced thither, but found the gates ſhut and well guarded. When they therefore informed them what their buſineſs was, the guards ſaid, they would cheerfully go and tell it to the burgomaſters and ſheriffs, who had poſted them there. They did ſo; and the burgomaſters and jurats told them to return and ſay, that they would call a council to conſider of it. When they came back with this anſwer, John Lyon cried out; 'Advance, advance! let us attack Bruges; for, if we wait until they ſhall have held their council, we ſhall find great difficulty to gain an entrance: it is better we attack them before they conſult together, and the ſuddenneſs of our attack will ſurpriſe them.'

This plan was followed; and the men of Ghent advanced to the barriers and ditches of Bruges, John Lyon marching at their head on a black horſe. He quickly diſmounted, and took an axe in his hand.

When the guard, who were not in ſufficient ſtrength, ſaw the men of Ghent were ſo determined to attack them, they were frightened, and ran away down

down the ſtreets as far as the market-place, crying out, 'Here are the men of Ghent! Quickly to your poſts; for they are before your walls, and at your gates.'

Thoſe of Bruges who were aſſembling for the council were thunderſtruck, and had not time to aſſemble nor to give any orders upon the occaſion, whilſt the majority of the people were deſirous that the gates ſhould immediately be thrown open. It behoved them to agree in this with the commonalty; otherwiſe it would have turned out badly for the rich inhabitants. The burgomaſter, ſheriffs, with many of the townſmen, came to the gate where the men of Ghent were with a good inclination to attack it.

The burgomaſter and magiſtrates of Bruges, who for that day had the goverment of the town, advanced to open the wicket to parly with John Lyon. By treaty, they opened the barriers and gate, at which they held their conference, and were good friends. All now entered the town. John Lyon rode by the ſide of the burgomaſter, and ſhewed himſelf a bold and valiant man: his men marched in his rear in bright armour. It was a handſome ſight to ſee them thus enter Bruges until they came to the market-place, where, as they arrived, they formed themſelves in array in the ſquare. John Lyon held a white truncheon in his hand.

A formal alliance was then entered into between the townſmen of Ghent and Bruges, which they mutually ſwore to keep, and to remain for ever as good friends and neighbours: thoſe of Ghent were allowed

allowed to ſummon them, and to lead them with them wherever they pleaſed.

Soon after they had been thus drawn up in the market-place, John Lyon and ſome of his captains went to the hall, whence they iſſued a proclamation for all the men of Ghent to retire peaceably to their quarters, and there to diſarm themſelves without noiſe, or any tumult, under pain of death, which was quickly obeyed. They were alſo forbidden to diſlodge any one, or to engage in any quarrels, or to take any thing from their hoſts without inſtantly paying for it, under the ſame penalty.

This proclamation being iſſued, another was publiſhed on the part of the town, for each houſeholder to receive as friends the good men of Ghent, and to afford them all ſorts of proviſion at the market prices; and that no undue advantages ſhould be taken, nor any quarrels nor contentions ſtirred up, under pain of death.

All perſons retired now to their houſes or quarters; and the inhabitants of the two towns thus remained amicably together for two days, and ſtrengthened their alliance and friendſhip mutually. Their treaties being drawn out and ſealed, on the third day the men of Ghent departed, and marched to the town of Damme, which inſtantly opened its gates, and received them moſt courteouſly: they remained there two days. John Lyon, during his ſhort ſtay, was ſeized with a ſudden ſickneſs that ſwelled his body exceedingly: the night he was taken ill, he had ſupped in great revelry with the

ladies of the town; for which reaſon, ſeveral ſaid and maintaned that he had been poiſoned. Of this I know nothing, therefore ſhall not inſiſt on it; but I do know that on the morrow he was placed on a litter, for he was taken ill in the night, and carried to Ardenbourg; but death prevented him going further, to the great ſorrow of the men of Ghent, who were thrown into confuſion by the event. All his enimies were as much rejoiced thereat as his friends were caſt down.

His body was conveyed to Ghent; and, on account of his death, the whole army returned thither. When the news of his deceaſe was known in that town, it cauſed much ſorrow; for he was greatly beloved by all, excepting the party of the earl. The clergy went out to meet the body, and conducted it into town with as much ſolemnity as if he had been earl of Flanders. He was interred in the church of St. Nicholas, where his obſequies were performed, and where he lies.

Notwithſtanding the death of John Lyon, the alliance between Ghent and Bruges was not broken; for they had carried ſufficient hoſtages with them to Ghent, for the due performance of all its articles.

The earl was exceedingly rejoiced at the death of John Lyon; as were Gilbert Matthew, his brothers, the deacon of the ſmall craft, and all the party of the earl, who ſent greater reinforcements than before to all his towns and caſtles, and ordered a ſufficient number of good knights and ſquires of the caſtlewicks of Lille and Douay into

the

the town of Ypres, declaring he would make Ghent repent of its conduct.

Soon after the death of John Lyon, thoſe of Ghent conſidered they could not not long remain without leaders. The deacons of the trades and the guards of the gates ſelected, according to their opinion, four of the moſt courageous and enterpriſing for their commanders, whoſe names were, John Pruniaux, John Boule, Raſle de Harzelle and Peter du Bois. They ſwore to pay theſe commanders the moſt exact obedience, under pain of death; and theſe four ſwore alſo to preſerve and defend the honour and franchiſes of the town of Ghent.

The four commanders excited thoſe of Ghent to march againſt Ypres and the franc de Bruges, in order to obtain their union or put them to death. They therefore ſet off from Ghent, in grand array, to the amount of at leaſt twelve thouſand, all clad in bright armour. They took the road to Courtray. The inhabitants of Courtray allowed them to enter their town without fear, for they were within the juriſdiction of Ghent: they there refreſhed themſelves at their eaſe for two days. On the third day, they marched towards Ypres, carrying with them two hundred well armed men from among the croſs-bows of Courtray. They followed the road to Thorout, where on their arrival they halted; and the commanders held a council, in which they reſolved to ſend three or four thouſand of their men, under the command of the captain of the white hoods, to treat with the inhabitants of Ypres,

and the main body to follow to reinforce them, if there ſhould be occaſion. Theſe orders were executed, and they came before Ypres.

The commonalty of Ypres and the ſmall handicrafts, hearing of the arrival of the army from Ghent, inſtantly armed themſelves, and drew up in the market-place, to the amount of full five thouſand. The rich inhabitants had not any power in the town. The knights placed there in garriſon by the earl advanced, in handſome order, to the gate leading to Thorout, where the Ghent men had halted withoutſide the barriers, requeſting they would allow them to enter.

The knights and their men were drawn up before the gate, and ſhewed ſuch an appearance that the men of Ghent could never have gained admittance but by force. However, the ancient trades of the town were reſolved they ſhould enter, inſpite of the knights: they left, therefore, the market-place, and came to the gate which the knights were guarding, and ſaid; 'Open the gate to our good friends and neighbours from Ghent: we will have them enter our town.' The knights replied, 'they would do no ſuch thing; for they had been ordered thither by the earl of Flanders to defend the town, which they would do to the utmoſt of their power; and it was not poſſible for the force of thoſe of Ghent to enter otherwiſe than by treaſon.'

Words multiplied ſo faſt between the gentlemen and the deacons of ſmall handicrafts, that the laſt ſhouted out, 'Kill them, kill them! they ſhall not

be

be maſters of our town.' They were immediately attacked, and, after a long conteſt, were roughly driven down the ſtreets, as numbers were againſt them; and five knights were ſlain, among whom were ſir Robert and ſir Thomas de la Hourdrie, which was a great pity. Sir Henry d'Antoing was in imminent danger of his life, and with great difficulty could ſome of the principal inhabitants ſave him: at laſt, they did ſucceed in it, and many of the others were ſaved alſo. The gate was opened, ſo that the men of Ghent entered the town, and became the maſters of it, without doing any damage. When they had remained there for two days, and had taken hoſtages from the inhabitants, who entered into a ſimilar treaty with thoſe of Bruges, Courtray, Gramont and Damme, they ſet out from Ypres in a moſt courteous manner, and returned to Ghent.

CHAP. XXV.

THE MEN OF GHENT BESIEGE THE TOWN OF OUDENARDE ON ALL SIDES.—THEY MAKE A GRAND ASSAULT ON THE EARL OF FLANDERS IN DENDREMONDE.

THE earl of Flanders, who reſided at Lille, heard how the inhabitants of Ypres had turned againſt him, and what the ſmall handicrafts had done: he was ſorely vexed, as well for the loſs of thoſe knights who had there been ſlain as for other

cauſes. He, however, comforted himſelf by ſaying, 'Well, if we have this time loſt Ypres, we ſhall another time regain it to their curſe; for I will ſtrike off ſuch numbers of heads, all others ſhall be aſtoniſhed at it.'

The earl intended particularly to provide the town of Oudenarde moſt amply with all ſorts of ſtores, proviſion and men at arms; for he thought that the men of Ghent would ſoon come to beſiege it; and, if they ſucceeded, the loſs would be great to him, for they would then have the whole navigation of the fine river Scheld at their command.

He ſent thither numbers of knights and ſquires from Flanders, Hainault and Artois, who aſſembled their people in the town whether the inhabitants would or not.

The commanders in Ghent were informed what great preparations the earl had made in Oudenarde: they determined to attack it, declaring they would not return until they had gained it, had ſlain all within, and razed the walls to the ground.

Orders were given in Ghent for every one to provide himſelf in a manner becoming his rank, and to be ready to march whitherſoever he might be led. None dared to diſobey this order: tents and pavilions were packed up, with all other ſtores: having marched out of Ghent, they encamped before Oudenarde, in the beautiful meadows on the banks of the Scheld.

Three days after, the men from Bruges arrived, for they had been ſummoned, and took up their quarters on the ſide near to their town, bringing with

with them great quantities of baggage and proviſion. Next came thoſe from Ypres in great array: then the men of Poperingue, Meſſines and Gramont. The Flemings thus drawn up before Oudenarde were upwards of one hundred thouſand: they made bridges of boats and hurdles by which they croſſed over the Scheld to each other.

The earl, who reſided at Lille, thinking they would attack Dendremonde firſt, had ſent to Germany, Gueldres and Brabant, to aſk the ſuccour of a number of knights. The duke of Mons, his couſin, had come to ſerve him with a large body of knights, and had entered Dendremonde, where they met the earl of Flanders, who was already arrived there by his frontiers of Hainault and Brabant, and was truly glad of their company.

The Flemings maintained the ſiege of Oudenarde for a long time; during which, there were daily many grand attacks and ſkirmiſhes, and ſeveral gallant deeds of arms, both before the town and at the barriers, where numbers were killed and wounded, for the Flemings acted madly and fooliſhly in hazarding their perſons in theſe ſkirmiſhes, often to their great loſs.

There were full eight hundred lances, knights and ſquires, in the town of Oudenarde, all valiant men, among whom were ſeveral barons, ſuch as the lords de Guiſtelle, de Villiers, de Hullut and de Cornais, Flemings: from Hainault were, the lords d'Anghien, d'Antoing, de Boſnel, de Taux, de Gommegines and his three brothers, ſir John, ſir Daniel and ſir Joſeph, the lords de Stainbourg;

de Carue, ſir Gerard de Marqueillies, the lord de Cohen, ſir Raſſe de Montigny, ſir Henry de la Hamede, ſir John de Gres and other knights, amounting to about one hundred and five in number. They kept up a regular and numerous guard; for they had not any confidence in the inhabitants, and they made the women and children retire into the monaſteries. The citizens and townſmen kept within their houſes; and, in order to prevent the bad effects of the cannon and the perpetual fire which the Flemings kept up againſt the town, they had the houſes covered with earth, to hinder them from taking fire.

During the ſiege of Oudenarde, the commanders of the Flemings were informed that the earl was at Dendremonde, and had with him his couſin the duke de Mons and numbers of other knights. They determined to ſend ſix thouſand of their army thither, to examine its appearance, and to make an aſſault upon it.

This reſolution was executed. The detachment which had been ordered, under the command of Raſſe de Harzelle, continued their march until they came to a ſmall village on the river Teure, a ſhort league from Dendremonde, where they took up their quarters. Theſe Flemings had provided themſelves with a number of boats, which they had had ſent down the river, that they might embark on board of them, and attack the place by land and water. A little after midnight, they aroſe, armed themſelves, and made every preparation to begin the attack the inſtant they ſhould be arrived there; for

for they wiſhed to ſurpriſe the knights in their beds. They began their march; but ſome of the country people, who had heard of this intention of the Flemings, informed the guards of it, ſaying, 'Be ſure you keep a ſtrict and good guard; for a large body of the men of Ghent, who have been benighted, are lying hard by here, and we know what they intend to do.'

The guard at the gate related this to their captain, who was a knight from Holland, called ſir Thierry de Bredoro: on receiving which intelligence, he ſtrengthened his guard, and ſent information of it to all the knights lodged in the caſtle and in the different houſes.

Immediately on the break of day, the Flemings advanced by land and in their boats, well prepared for an inſtant attack. When thoſe in the caſtle and town ſaw them approach, they ſounded their trumpets to alarm every one, the greater part of the knights and ſquires being already armed.

The earl of Flanders, who ſlept in the caſtle, heard of the march of the Flemings, and that they had commenced the attack; on which he inſtantly roſe, armed himſelf, and ſallied forth from the caſtle, his banner diſplayed before him. At this time, there were in the town, ſir Goſſuin de Wrle great bailiff of Flanders, the lord de Gau, ſir Gerard de Raſenghien, ſir Philip de Mamines, ſir Philip de Rungi, a Burgundian, and others. All theſe knights advanced to meet the banner of the earl, and then they marched under it to the aſſault, which was already begun in a ſevere and horrible manner;

manner; for theſe Flemings had brought in their boats cannons and croſs-bows, which ſhot ſuch large and heavy bolts that when any one was ſtruck by them there was no eſcape from death. Againſt theſe bolts they were ſtrongly ſhielded; and the earl had with him ſome excellent croſs-bows, who by their ſhooting gave the Flemings enough to do.

The duke de Mons was in another part with his troops drawn up, his banner before him; and there were in his company the lord de Brederode, ſir Joſeph and ſir Thierry de Lavare, ſir Vivant de Chuperois, and ſeveral more, who each performed well their duty.

In another quarter of the town, poſted at a gate, were ſir Robert Dale, ſir John Villain, the lord de Vindeſcot and ſir Robert Mareſchal. The attack here was very ſharp, for the Flemings made vigorous aſſaults by land and water, in which many were killed and wounded on each ſide; but more on the ſide of the Flemings than on that of the gentlemen as the Flemings adventured themſelves foolhardily.

This attack laſted, without ceaſing, from the break of day until full noon. A knight of the earl's party was ſlain, called ſir Hugh de Rony, a Burgundian: he was much lamented, for he loſt his life by too much boldneſs, and for want of prudence. Raſſe de Harzelle, the commander of the detachment, fought valiantly, and by his words and actions greatly encouraged the men of Ghent.

The aſſault ceaſed in the afternoon, for Raſſe found he was labouring in vain, and that in Dendremonde

monde there were ſuch brave men that it could not eaſily be taken: his troops alſo began to be fatigued. He therefore ſounded a retreat, when the men retired in a handſome manner along the river ſide, bringing off their fleet of boats; and on the morrow they returned to their army before Oudenarde.

CHAP. XXVI.

SEVERAL ASSAULTS ARE MADE ON OUDENARDE. —PEACE CONCLUDED BETWEEN THE FLEMINGS AND THE EARL OF FLANDERS, BY MEANS OF THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY.

THE ſiege of Oudenarde continued for a long time; and the Flemings before it were maſters of the river and of the adjoining country, ſo that no proviſion could be introduced without great danger, and on the ſide towards Hainault. Sometimes victuallers, in hopes of gain, ventured, whilſt the army was aſleep, to come cloſe to the barriers with proviſion, which by that means were brought into Oudenarde.

Among the many attacks made on the town, there was one which was very vigorous: it laſted the whole day. Upon this occaſion, ſome new knights were created from Flanders, Hainault and Artois, who wiſhed to diſtinguiſh themſelves. Theſe new knights advanced to the barriers, where ſeveral ſkirmiſhes took place with the men of Ghent, in

which many were killed and wounded: but they paid little attention to this, and being regardleſs of death, they advanced ſo boldly that when thoſe in the front were ſlain or diſabled, the rear dragged them out, took their places, and kept a handſome countenance. This attack laſted until the evening, when thoſe of Oudenarde returned into the town, and ſhut the gates and barriers: they then buried their dead, and took great care of their wounded.

The Flemings thought they ſhould certainly conquer the town by aſſault or by famine; for they well knew they had ſo cloſely ſurrounded it by land and water that nothing could enter it; and their remaining before it would not be of any detriment to them, for they were in their own country, and near their own homes. They had alſo every neceſſary article for their ſupport, with all other things in great abundance and cheaper than they would have had them at Bruges or Ghent.

The earl of Flanders, being aware of the great number of men at arms that were in the town, ſuſpected the intentions of the Flemings, that by keeping up the blockade, they would in the end ſtarve them to a ſurrender: he would therefore willingly have liſtened to any overture for a negotiation that was honourable for him. To ſay the truth, this war againſt his ſubjects was highly diſagreeable to him, and he had undertaken it contrary to his own opinion. His mother, the lady Margaret counteſs of Artois, blamed him much, and took great pains to put an end to it.

The counteſs reſided in the city of Arras, whence ſhe

ſhe wrote to the duke of Burgundy, to whom the heritage of Flanders would fall by his marriage with her grand-daughter, on the death of the earl. The duke, who had before received information of this affair, for news was daily brought to him on the ſubject, came to Arras, attended by his council, and ſir Guy de la Trimouille, ſir John de Vienne admiral of France, ſir Guy de Pontalliers and ſeveral others. The counteſs received him with great joy, diſcuſſed with much wiſdom the ſubject of this war between her ſon and his ſubjects; how unbecoming and very diſpleaſing it was not only to her but to all reaſonable perſons. She told him, that many valiant men, barons, knights and ſquires, were honourably ſhut up in the town of Oudenarde, and in very imminent danger; and ſhe begged, for God's ſake, he would think of and provide a remedy.

The duke replied, that he was bound to do ſo, and would exert himſelf to the utmoſt of his power. Shortly after he left Arras, and went to Tournay, where he was joyfully received; for the inhabitants of Tournay wiſhed much for peace on account of their merchandize, which was ſhut up on the Scheld.

The duke of Burgundy ſent the abbot de St. Martin to the army before Oudenarde to ſound the leaders of the men from Ghent, if they would enter into a negotiation. The abbot brought the duke for anſwer, that out of reſpect to him, they would enter into a treaty: the duke granted paſſports, and received the ſame from the Flemings, for the negotiators

negotiators to meet at Pont de Roſne, where the firſt conference laſted from morning until night.

The duke himſelf went thither to parley with the Flemings; and, after the conference, he returned to Tournay in company with the earl, whom he brought back with him.

Theſe conferences continued for fifteen days. It was difficult to ſatisfy the Flemings, as they inſiſted on having Oudenarde demoliſhed, to which the duke and his miniſters would not conſent.

The Flemings kept up a grand and haughty appearance, making no acccount of peace; for they maintained, that as thoſe within Oudenarde could not leave it without great danger to themſelves, they conſidered the town as conquered.

The duke of Burgundy, ſeeing theſe Flemings ſo proud and preſumptuous, and ſo indifferent to conclude a treaty, could not conceive their meaning; he therefore requeſted a paſſport for his marſhal to viſit the knights in Oudenarde, which was inſtantly granted him. The marſhal of Burgundy went into the town, and found the knights well provided, exceping ſome articles of which they were greatly in want: they, however, boldly ſaid to the marſhal; 'Tell my lord of Burgundy from us, not to enter into any diſhonourable treaty on our account; for, through God's mercy, we are in good health, and care not for our enemies.' This anſwer pleaſed the duke much, who at the time was at Pont de Roſne: however, he did not neglect to puſh forwards his negotiations.

To ſay the truth, thoſe of Ypres and Bruges were

tired

tired of the war, as well as thoſe from the Franc, who ſaw winter approaching: they therefore argued in council, that ſince the duke of Burgundy, to accommodate the buſineſs, had come thither in perſon, and had engaged to have every thing pardoned; ſince alſo the earl would return in an amicable manner to Ghent, there to reſide, and, let what would happen, would never remember the paſt; all theſe conſiderations ought to be attended to; and they conſidered themſelves bound to acknowledge their lord with reſpect, and not attempt to tear his inheritance from him.

Theſe words greatly ſoftened the men of Ghent, and they agreed to accept the treaty. The duke gave a moſt magnificent dinner to the principal perſons from Ghent, Bruges, Ypres and Courtray. On that day, it was ſettled that the ſiege ſhould be raiſed, and a ſolid peace concluded between the earl and his ſubjects: that the earl ſhould grant a general pardon to all, without any reſervation, diſſembling or exception whatever: that he ſhould reſide at Ghent, and that within a year the citizens of Ghent ſhould rebuild the caſtle of Andreghien, which report ſaid they had burnt. For the fuller confirmation of all this, John Pruniaux was to accompany the duke of Burgundy to Tournay, where it was to be properly drawn up and ſealed. After this, the duke returned to Tournay, and John Pruniaux and John Boule remained with the army.

On the morrow, peace was proclaimed between the two parties, the ſiege was raiſed, and every man returned to his home. The earl diſbanded his ſoldiers,

diers, and greatly thanked the foreigners for the gallant ſervices they had done him: he then went to Lille, to execute the treaties which his ſon in law the duke of Burgundy had concluded for him.

Some of the neighbouring countries ſaid, that this was a double-faced peace; that there would be another rebellion; and that the earl had only conſented to it, in order to extricate ſuch a number of noble knights and ſquires from the danger they ran in Oudenarde.

John Pruniaux, after the breaking up of the ſiege, went to Tournay, where the duke of Burgundy entertained him handſomely. The articles of the treaty were there completed, and ſealed by the duke and the earl of Flanders. John Pruniaux afterwards returned to Ghent, and ſhewed what he had done. The duke of Burgundy had ſo well managed the men of Ghent, by kind words, that Oudenarde was ſaved from deſtruction; for, when the ſiege was raiſed in conformity to the treaty, they would have demoliſhed the gates and walls of the town, that it might remain open and ready for them to retire to.

The earl of Flanders having reſided ſome time at Lille, after the duke of Burgundy had returned to France, went to Bruges, where he made a long ſtay: during which, he ſecretly ſhewed great diſpleaſure to ſome of the citizens of Bruges, without, however, doing any thing more, nor ſeeming deſirous of otherwiſe puniſhing them for their having ſo readily deſerted his party, and placing themſelves under the command of Ghent. Theſe citizens

tizens excuſed themſelves by ſaying, what was indeed true, that it had not been through any fault of theirs, but was ſolely owing to the ſmall handicrafts of the town, who would ally themſelves with thoſe of Ghent when John Lyon came before Bruges. The earl paſſed over their miſconduct with as fair looks as he could, but he did not the leſs remember it.

We will now leave him and the Flemings, and return to the affairs of Brittany.

CHAP. XXVII.

THE DUKE OF BRITTANY RETURNS FROM ENGLAND, AT THE ENTREATY OF HIS SUBJECTS.—THE ENGLISH ARE DESIROUS OF MARRYING THEIR YOUNG KING.—THE KNIGHTS OF ENGLAND SENT TO THE AID OF THE DUKE OF BRITTANY MEET WITH GREAT TEMPESTS AT SEA.

YOU have before heard that the duke of Brittany reſided in England with king Richard and his uncles, who entretained him handſomely, and that his country was in great trouble; for the king of France had ordered thither his conſtable with a large body of men at arms, who had fixed their quarters at Pontorſon, and near St. Michael's Mount, whence they made war on all the adjacent country. The inhabitants of the cities and principal towns kept themſelves well incloſed, and

were very anxious for the return of their lord, to whom they had already ſent letters and meſſengers: but he was fearful of truſting to them, until the prelates and barons of Brittany and the great towns began to murmur, and ſay; 'We ſend every week letters of invitation to the duke; but, inſtead of coming, he only returns us excuſes.' 'In God's name,' ſaid ſome of them, 'there muſt be a reaſon for this: we ſend to him in too ſimple a manner. We ought to ſend him a knight or two of rank, in whom he may truſt, and who will fully explain to him the true ſtate of the country.'

This propoſal was agreed to; and two valiant knights, ſir Geoffry de Querimel and ſir Euſtace de la Houſſaye, were entreated to go to England, at the joint ſolicitations of the prelates, barons and principal towns in Brittany*.

Theſe two knights made preparations for their voyage to England, and, embarking on board a veſſel at Cano†, had weather and wind according to their wiſh. They made ſail for Southampton, and there diſembarked: continuing their journey to London, they found the duke and ducheſs of Brittany and ſir Robert Knolles, who received them with great joy, and handſomely entertained them.

The knights then related to the duke the ſtate and diſpoſition of his country, and how very ar-

---

* The hiſtoire de la Bretagne mentions three other perſons as deputies, and cites the public acts for authority. Geoffry de Querimel was a favourite of the duke.

† Cano. Q. Concarneau.

dently

dently his return was wiſhed for; to confirm which, they gave to the duke their credential letters from the prelates, barons and principal towns of Brittany.

The duke gave full credence to the knights and their letters, and ſaid he would ſhew them to the king and his uncles, which he did.

When the king and his uncles heard all theſe things, and how the whole of Brittany, the prelates, barons and principal towns, excepting Gueſclin, Laval, Cliſſon, Rohan and Rochefort, had ſent to the duke their lord, ſupplicating him to return to his own country, the king ſaid to him; 'You muſt go over to Brittany, ſince they ſend for you, and maintain your rights: we will ſhortly ſend to your aſſiſtance a ſufficient force of men at arms to defend your frontiers; but you will leave the lady-ducheſs with my mother and her brothers, whilſt you go to carry on this war.'

The duke heard theſe words with great joy, and made his preparations accordingly: he was not long in having every thing ready at Southampton. When taking leave of the king, the princeſs of Wales, and of his ducheſs, he made a ſtrict treaty of alliance with the king of England, and ſwore on his faith, that if he ſhould ſpeedily be ſuccoured by the Engliſh, he would always remain ſteadily attached to them, and do all in his power to make his country join with him; and that England ſhould always find his ports open, whenever her fleets ſhould come thither.

After this, he ſet out from London, accompanied

by ſir Robert Knolles and the two knights who were ſent to him, with about one hundred men at arms and two hundred archers. There was a ſhort delay at Southampton, waiting for a favourable wind, where they embarked. They landed at Guerrande*, and rode on to Vannes.

The inhabitants of that city received the duke with great demonſtrations of joy, as indeed did the whole country when they heard of his arrival.

The duke refreſhed himſelf for five days, or thereabouts, in Vannes, and then went to Nantes: there he was waited on by barons, prelates, knights, ladies and damſels, who all offered their ſervices, and put themſelves under his obedience. They greatly complained of the French, and of the conſtable, who had quartered himſelf in the country near Rennes.

The duke ſaid; 'My friends, I ſhall ſhortly have aid from England; for without the aſſiſtance of the Engliſh, I ſhall not be able to defend myſelf againſt the French; otherwiſe they will be too ſtrong for us, ſeeing that we are not all in this country of one mind. But when the forces which the king of England has promiſed ſhall be arrived, if they have done you wrongs, we will return them the compliment.' This ſpeech greatly pleaſed thoſe of the duke's party who were preſent.

In this year, about St. Andrew's day, died the lord Charles, king of Germany and emperor of

* Guerrande,—a town in Brittany, between the rivers Vilaine and Loire, dioceſe of Nantes.

Rome.

Rome. King Charles had done ſo well by money and by his great connections, that the electors of the empire had given it under their oaths and ſeals, they would elect, after his deceaſe, his ſon emperor, and exert their whole power to maintain the ſiege before Aix, and to defend him againſt all oppoſers; ſo that, after the death of Charles, his ſon Winceſlaus, who before was king of the Romans, ſigned himſelf emperor of Rome, king of Germany and Bohemia.

About this ſame ſeaſon, there were many counclis held in England, by the uncles of the king, the prelates and barons, relative to marrying the young king Richard. The Engliſh would have preferred a princeſs of Hainault, out of love for that good lady queen Philippa, who had been ſo virtuous, liberal and honourable, and who had come from Hainault; but duke Albert, at that time, had not any daughters marriageable.

The duke of Lancaſter would willingly have ſeen the king, his nephew, married to his daughter, whom he had had by the lady Blanch of Lancaſter, but the people would not have conſented to this for two reaſons; that the lady was his couſin-german, and too nearly related; and that they wiſhed the king to chooſe a queen from beyond ſea, in order to gain ſtronger alliances.

The ſiſter of the king of Bohemia and of Germany, daughter of the lately deceaſed emperor, was then propoſed, and the whole council aſſented to it.

Sir Simon Burley, a ſage and valiant knight,

who had been the king's tutor, and much beloved by the prince his father, was nominated to go to Germany, to treat of this marriage, as a wiſe and able negotiator. Every neceſſary preparation was ordered, as well for his expences as otherwiſe. He ſet out from England magnificently equipped, and arrived at Calais; from thence he went to Gravelines, and continued his journey until he came to Bruſſels, where he met the duke Winceſlaus of Brabant, the duke Albert, the count de Blois, the count de St. Pol, ſir William de Maulny, and numbers of knights from Brabant, Hainault and other parts, partaking of a grand feaſt of tilts and tournaments; and it was on this occaſion all theſe lords were there aſſembled.

The duke and ducheſs of Brabant, from the love they bore the king of England, received his knight moſt courteouſly. They were much rejoiced on hearing the cauſe of his journey into Germany, and ſaid it would be a good match between the king of England and their niece. They gave to ſir Simon Burley, on his departure, ſpecial letters to the emperor, to aſſure him they approved very much of this marriage. The knight ſet out from Bruſſels, and took the road through Louvain to Cologne.

About this time, the king of England and his council ordered two hundred men at arms and four hundred archers to Brittany, under the command of ſir John Arundel: ſir Hugh Calverley, ſir Thomas Banaſter, ſir Thomas Trivet, ſir Walter Pole, ſir John Bourchier, the lord Ferrers and the lord

lord Baſſet were appointed to this expedition. Theſe knights made all the preparation they wanted, and went to Southampton, where they embarked on board their veſſels. When they had a favourable wind, they ſet ſail.

The firſt day, it was fair; but, towards evening, it veered about, and became quite contrary, which drove them, whether they would or not, on the coaſts of Cornwall. The wind was ſo ſtrong and impetuous, they were afraid to caſt anchor. On the morrow, the ſtorm continued as fierce as ever, and forced them into the Iriſh ſea; when it became ſo violent, three of their ſhips ſunk, on board of which were ſir John Arundel, ſir Thomas Banaſter and ſir Hugh Calverley. Upwards of eighty periſhed of their complement of men at arms, and in the number the commander in chief, ſir John Arundel, which was great pity, for he was a valiant and enterpriſing knight.

Sir Thomas Banaſter and ſir Walter Pole, two brave knights, were drowned, and many others.

Sir Hugh Calverley never before experienced greater peril; for all thoſe who were in his veſſel were drowned, except himſelf and ſeven ſailors; but ſir Hugh and the ſailors took to the maſts and tables to ſave themſelves, and, as the wind was ſtrong, they were blown on the ſhore: but, having ſwallowed much ſea-water, they were long ſick and uncomfortable.

Sir Thomas Trivet, ſir John Bourchier, the lords Ferrers and Baſſet eſcaped this danger, with others:

however they were much driven and tumbled about.

When the tempeſt ceaſed, they returned as well as they could to Southampton, and waited on the king and his uncles; to whom they related their misfortunes, including ſir Hugh Calverley among the drowned: but it was not ſo, as it afterwards appeared when he came to London.

This expedition was put an end to; and the duke of Brittany did not receive any aſſiſtance from the Engliſh, which was very much againſt him; for all that ſeaſon and the enſuing winter the French carried on a deſtructive war. The Bretons, that is to ſay, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon and his men, took the town of Dinant, by means of veſſels and boats, which they pillaged, and kept afterwards, for a long time, againſt the duke and the country.

We will now return to the affairs of Flanders.

CHAP. XXVIII.

THE TOWN OF GHENT SENDS AMBASSADORS TO THE EARL OF FLANDERS TO ENTREAT HIM TO COME THITHER.

WHEN peace was concluded between the earl of Flanders and the men of Ghent, by the mediation of the duke of Burgundy, which gained him

him great popularity throughout the country, the men of Ghent were very deſirous that the earl ſhould come and fix his reſidence in their town. The provoſt of Haerlabeke had ſtrongly adviſed the earl to improve the affection between him and Ghent, in which he was ſeconded by all the earl's relations.

The earl, however, continued to reſide at Bruges, and never went near Ghent, which ſurpriſed every one; but, in particular, the well-intentioned and principal inhabitants, who were anxious for peace. As for the white hoods and pillagers, who only ſought diſturbance, they dreaded his return; for they ſuſpected, that if he did come, they would be privately corrected for the evils they had done.

Notwithſtanding theſe doubts of the magiſtracy and town-council, the rich men were particularly impatient for his arrival, and wiſhed they would ſend to requeſt it; for they did not look upon the peace as ſtable until he ſhould have reſided in Ghent.

Twenty-four deputies were ſelected to go to Bruges, to declare to the earl the great love the town of Ghent had for him, and their wiſhes for his reſidence among them. They ſet off in a magnificent manner, as thoſe ſhould who wait on their lord; but they were told on leaving the town, 'Never think of returning to Ghent, unleſs you bring back the earl with you; otherwiſe you will find the gates ſhut.'

Thus did the citizens of Ghent ſet out, taking the road towards Bruges. When they were be-

tween

tween Deynſe and Bruges, they learnt that the earl was coming, which gave them great pleaſure; and, after they had rode on about a league, they perceived the earl in the plain. On ſeeing him, they advanced in two diviſions, making a lane, through which the earl and his knights paſſed.

The citizens made low reverences, and ſhewed every mark of reſpect to the earl and to his attendants: but he ſcarcely looked at them, only touched a little his hat; and, during the whole time he never noticed them. Thus they all rode on; the earl on one ſide, the deputation from Ghent on another; until they came to Deynſe, where they ſtopped, for the earl was to dine there. The deputation took ſome houſes for themſelves, and dined alſo. After dinner, they all waited on the earl; and, having knelt down before him (for the earl was ſeated,) they preſented to him the humble affection of the citizens of Ghent, and remonſtrated with him, that from their great love to him, and their earneſt deſire for him to reſide among them, they had been deputed, adding; 'On our departure, my lord, the townſmen ſaid, that we muſt not think of returning unleſs we brought you with us.'

The earl, who had well heard theſe words, was for a time ſilent; when he ſaid calmly,—'I willingly believe all you ſay, and that many in Ghent wiſh me to come thither: but I am ſurpriſed they do not recollect, nor ſeem inclined to remember former times, when I was ſo deſirous of complying with all their requeſts, and how I expelled from

the

the country ſuch of my gentlemen as they com-plained of, in compliance with their laws. I have too often opened my priſons, to ſurrender up mine and their own burgeſſes, whenever they ſolicited it. I have loved and eſteemed them more than any other of my ſubjects; and they have behaved to me quite the contrary, ſlain my bailiff, deſtroyed the houſes of my people, driven away my officers, burnt the houſe in the world which I loved the moſt, forced my towns to ſide with them, murdered my knights in the town of Ypres: in ſhort, they have acted ſo wickedly towards me and my rights that I am tired of mentioning them, and wiſh never to remember them; but, whether I will or not, I cannot help doing ſo.'

'Ah, my lord,' replied the deputies, 'do not think more of what has paſſed: you have pardoned us for all thoſe evil deeds.'

'That is true,' anſwered the earl, 'and I do not mean, by what I have juſt ſaid, that in time to come you ſhall fare the worſe for it. I only point out to you the great cruelties and wickedneſs which I have ſuffered from the town of Ghent.'

The earl was then ſoftened: riſing up, he made them riſe alſo, and, calling to the lord de Ruiſeliers who was near him, ſaid, 'Let them bring wine.' The deputation drank of it, and then retired to their lodgings, where they remained all night, for the earl ſtaid there. On the morrow, they all rode together towards Ghent.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIX.

THE EARL OF FLANDERS ENTERS THE TOWN OF GHENT, AND SECRETLY DEPARTS FROM IT.—THE WALLS OF OUDENARDE ARE RAZED BY THE WHITE HOODS, THEIR ALLIES AND ACCOMPLICES.

WHEN the inhabitants of Ghent heard the earl was on the road thither, they were much rejoiced, and went out to meet him on horſeback and on foot; they bowed very lowly when they met him, and ſhewed him all the reverence in their power; but he paſſed on without ſaying a word, only juſt bowed his head to them,

He rode to his hôtel, called la Pôterne, where he dined. Great preſents were made him by the town, and the magiſtrates waited on him, who humbled themſelves greatly in his preſence, as was but right.

The earl addreſſed them, ſaying, 'that when there was a ſtable peace, every thing ought to have a peaceable appearance: I would, therefore, that theſe white hoods be laid aſide, and ſome amends made for the death of my bailiff, for his family are very importunate with me on the ſubject.'

'My lord,' replied the magiſtrates, 'that is fully our intention; and we beſeech your highneſs, that you would have the goodneſs to come to-morrow to the ſquare, and explain to your ſubjects, in an amicable

amicable manner, what your wiſhes are: they will be ſo much rejoiced on ſeeing you again that they will comply with all your deſires.'

The earl agreed to their requeſt. In the evening, it was known to numbers, that the earl was, on the morrow, to harangue the people at eight o'clock in the morning, in the market-place. Good men were much pleaſed thereat; but the mad and outrageous thought little of it, and ſaid they had had enough of harangues, and knew well what they were to do.

John Pruniaux, John Boule, Raſſe de Harzelle and Peter du Bois, leaders of the white hoods, were fearful that every thing would be laid to their charge, and, having diſcourſed together, ſent for ſome of their men, making choice of thoſe that were the worſt and moſt violent of their companies, and ſaid to them; 'Be ſure you remain all this night and to-morrow armed; and whatever may be ſaid to you, do not put off your white hoods; but be all of you in the market-place to-morrow by eight o'clock, and make not any riot unleſs it be firſt begun on you. You will either give theſe orders to your companies or ſend them by a ſafe hand.' They anſwered they would punctually comply, which they did.

The next morning, at eight o'clock, they all went to the market-place, but not in a body: they ſeparated in different parties, for their leaders were then among them. The earl came on horſeback to the market-place, attended by his knights, ſquires and magiſtrates of the town. John de

Faucille

Fauciłle was with him, and upwards of forty of the richeſt and moſt reſpectable inhabitants.

The earl, as he was paſſing up the market-place, caſt his eyes on the white hoods, which made him melancholy: he diſmounted, as did his attendants, and went to a window, from whence he leaned out, on a crimſon cloth, which had there been ſpread for him.

The earl began to addreſs the people with a very diſcreet ſpeech, in which he ſhewed what love and affection he had borne them before they had angered him. He remonſtrated, that a prince and ſovereign lord ought to be loved, feared, obeyed and honoured by his ſubjects, and explained how very contrary they had acted. He alſo noticed how well he had always defended them againſt their enemies, and had kept them in peace and proſperity: that he had opened to them communications by ſea, which before his joyful acceſſion had been ſhut againſt them. He diſplayed much argument and good ſenſe, which were underſtood by the wiſe, and acknowledged for truth. He was well liſtened to by ſeveral, but by others not at all, for they were deſirous of confuſion.

When he had ſpoken an hour, he concluded by ſaying, 'that after having ſo fully explained every thing, he was willing to continue their good lord, in the ſame manner as he had formerly been: that he forgave all the injuries and contempt they had ſhewn him; and that he would never more recollect the evil deeds which had paſſed, but would preſerve to them their rights and franchiſes, as he had

had done. He entreated, therefore, that no novelties might be introduced, and that thoſe white hoods ſhould be laid aſide.'

During the firſt part of his ſpeech, all were ſilent, as if there had not been any one preſent; but, the moment he touched on the white hoods, murmurs were heard on all ſides, which ſhewed it was on that account.

The people were then entreated to retire to their houſes in a peaceable manner. The earl left the market-place with his attendants, and the reſt went to their homes. But I muſt ſay, that the white hoods came the firſt to the market-place, and were the laſt to quit it; and, when the earl preſſed through them, they looked ill-humoured at him, diſdaining to pull off their caps, which affected him much; for he ſaid afterwards to his knights, when retired to la Pôterne; 'I ſhall never gain my wiſh with theſe white hoods: they are an accurſed wicked people. My mind tells me, things will not remain long as they now are: if I may judge from appearances, there is much evil intended; and, were I to loſe all, I will not ſuffer ſuch pride and wickedneſs.'

The earl remained four or five days at Ghent, and then he departed in ſuch a manner as ſhewed he never again intended returning thither. He went to Lille, where he made his preparations for paſſing the winter. He ſcarcely took leave of any one when he quitted Ghent, and ſet out much out of humour, for which ſeveral of the town were diſpleaſed, and ſaid he would never do them any good

good again; that they would no more love him than he did them: he had now left them as he had done before; and that Gilbert and his brothers had ſo adviſed, ſeeing that he had ſo ſuddenly, and without affection, departed from Ghent.

John Pruniaux, Raſſe de Harzelle, John Boule and Peter du Bois, with the other wicked captains, were much pleaſed at all this, and ſpread rumours over the town, that the earl would return in the ſummer with ſufficient force to break the peace; that it behoved every one to be on his guard, and to lay in good ſtore of corn, oats, meat, ſalt, and all ſorts of proviſion, for that no dependance could be placed on the earl.

The townſmen, therefore, laid in very great ſtores of all things neceſſary for them: when it was told the earl, he was mightily ſurpriſed, and could not gueſs why they were ſo very ſuſpicious. To ſay the truth, when all which I have related is duly conſidered, one cannot but wonder how the men of Ghent diſſembled, and had done ſo from the beginning. The rich and principal men of the town could not excuſe themſelves for their conduct at the commencement of theſe commotions; for certainly if they had been willing, when John Lyon firſt introduced the wearing of white hoods, they could eaſily have prevented it: they might have ſent againſt the canal-diggers of Bruges other men who would have done as well as the white hoods: but they permitted them, becauſe they did not chooſe to have it thought they were againſt the franchiſes of the town. They there-

fore

fore conſented to every thing, for which the richeſt and moſt diſcreet men paid very dearly afterwards. They were no longer maſters in the town, and dared neither ſpeak nor act but as the white hoods pleaſed. They ſaid, that neither for John Lyon nor for Gilbert Matthew, nor for their wars and hatreds would they take part; but they were united in one point, the preſerving and defending the franchiſes of the citizens of Ghent, which they afterwards demonſtrated, for they made a war which laſted for ſeven years; and, during that time, there were no quarrels in the town, which was their great cauſe of defence both at home and abroad. They were ſo much united together that there were not any diſtractions among them, but each ſubſcribed his money and jewels to the general fund; and thoſe among them who had the greateſt abundance gave it to this ſtock, as you ſhall hear related.

Not long after the earl of Flanders' departure from Ghent, and fixing his reſidence at Lille, Oliver d'Auterme, couſin-german to Roger d'Auterme whom the men of Ghent murdered, ſent his defiance to that town, in revenge for his death. Sir Philip de Mamines did the ſame, as well as ſeveral others. After theſe challenges had been delivered, they met about fifty boats, with their crews, deſcending the Scheld, laden with corn for Ghent, on whom they retaliated for the death of their couſin: having ſeized the mariners, they put out their eyes, and in this maimed and miſerable ſtate they ſent them to Ghent.

The citizens of Ghent looked on this act as a perſonal injury done to them: when complaints of it were brought before the magiſtrates, they were much enraged, and knew not what to ſay. There were great murmurings throughout the town; and the majority of the inhabitants ſaid the earl of Flanders had done it, ſo that ſcarcely any one that was a reſpectable character could offer any thing in his defence.

The inſtant John Pruniaux, who was at the time the principal leader and maſter of the white hoods, heard this news, without ſaying a word to the magiſtrates of the town, (I know not if he mentioned his plan to the other captains, his companions, but I ſhould ſuppoſe he did,) aſſembled the greater part of the white hoods, and others equally inclined to do evil, and marched out of Ghent, taking the road to Oudenarde.

When he came thither there was not any guard nor centinel, for they ſuſpected nothing: he ſeized the gate, and entered the town with his men, who amounted to more than five thouſand. When morning came, he ſet labourers to work, with carpenters and maſons whom he had brought with him; and they never ceaſed working until they had deſtroyed the two gates, the towers and the walls, which they flung into the ditch on the ſide towards Ghent.

Now, how could theſe excuſe themſelves who had conſented to this wicked deed? for they remained in Oudenarde upwards of a month, deſtroying the gates and walls. If they had remanded

their

their people as ſoon as it was known what they were doing, one might have excuſed them; but they did no ſuch thing: on the contrary, they winked at it, and ſuffered them to proceed, until news was carried to the earl, who reſided at Lille, how John Pruniaux had ſtolen into Oudenarde, and was deſtroying two of the gates and walls of it, as well as the towers.

The earl was in great choler on hearing this; indeed, he had good cauſe for it; and ſaid, 'Ha, theſe accurſed people! the devil poſſeſſes them: I ſhall never have peace ſo long as theſe Ghent men have ſuch power.' He then ſent ſome of his council to the magiſtrates of Ghent, to remonſtrate with them on the violent outrage they had committed, and to declare they were people with whom no terms could be kept, ſince the peace which the duke of Burgundy had with great difficulty procured for them had been already broken and infringed.

The mayor and jurats of the town of Ghent excuſed themſelves by ſaying, 'that they never thought of breaking the peace, nor had they any ſuch wiſh or inclination; and that, if John Pruniaux had of himſelf committed any outrage, the town would not avow it.' They excuſed themſelves loyally and fully; but they added, 'that the earl had permitted great exceſſes to be committed againſt them, by thoſe of his houſehold, who had wounded and ſlain ſome of their fellow-citizens; and this was much felt by the whole town.' What ſay you, my lords, to this?'

The commiſſaries from the earl replied, 'they had well revenged themſelves.' 'Oh no,' anſwered the magiſtrates: 'we do not ſay that what John Pruniaux has done at Oudenarde was by way of revenge; for we can clearly prove by the treaty of peace, if we chooſe, and we appeal to the teſtimony of the duke of Burgundy, that Oudenarde was to have been diſmantled by us, or put in the ſtate it is now in: but, at the entreaty of the duke, we did not then inſiſt upon it.'

The commiſſaries replied; 'It appears then, by what you have ſaid, that you ordered it to be done, and you cannot now excuſe yourſelves from this charge: ſince you knew that John Pruniaux was gone to Oudenarde, (whither he had marched with a large army, and had ſurpriſed it under ſhadow of the peace,) and that he was deſtroying the fortifications and throwing the walls into the ditch, you ought to have gone thither and forbidden him to commit ſuch outrages, until you ſhould have laid your complaints before the earl. Of the wounding and aſſaulting your citizens, you ſhould have addreſſed yourſelves to the duke of Burgundy, who had made the peace, and remonſtrated with him on the buſineſs. By this means, your quarrels would have been made up; but you have not done ſo. My lord of Flanders therefore informs you, that ſince you have thus contemptuouſly behaved yourſelves towards him, and then petition him with ſwords in your hands, he will one day take ſuch cruel reveuge on you that all the world ſhall ever afterwards ſpeak of it.'

They

They then left the mayor and jurats of Ghent, and, after they had dined, ſet out on their return through Courtray to Lille; when they related to the earl what they had done, and what excuſes the town of Ghent had made.

CHAP. XXX.

THE MEN OF GHENT SURRENDER OUDENARDE. —THEY DESTROY THE HOUSES OF THE NOBLES. —A CRUEL AND PITILESS WAR RENEWED BETWEEN THE MEN OF GHENT AND THE NOBILITY.

ONE may well be ſurpriſed to hear the matter of this treaty ſo diverſely ſpoken of, and ſuch aſtoniſhing accounts told of it, which every one who reads may underſtand. Some ſaid, the men of Ghent were in the right to make this war, which was ſo cruel and of ſuch long continuance in Flanders, adding, they had a juſt cauſe for ſo doing; but it does not ſo appear to me from what I have ſeen, nor can I learn or underſtand but that the earl always preferred peace to war, excepting where his honour and dignity were concerned. Did he not give up the citizen who was confined in his priſon at Erclo? Yes, he did; and they murdered his bailiff. In order to preſerve peace, he again pardoned them this outrage; when they in one day cauſed an inſurrection throughout all Flanders

againſt him, and ſlew, even in the town of Ypres, five of his knights. They afterwards attacked Oudenarde, and beſieged it, doing every thing in their power to take and deſtroy it. After this, peace was concluded; but they refuſed to make any atonement for the death of Roger d'Auterme, though his family had frequently demanded it; for which that family had revenged themſelves on ſome mariners, by whom all theſe diſturbances were originally created: and was this a ſufficient reaſon for the total deſtruction of Oudenarde? I think not; and this opinion is confirmed by many others agreeing in it. They ſaid in reply, that the earl had other things to ſettle with Ghent; and inſiſted on having reparation made for what had been done to the mariners, before they would ſurrender Oudenarde.

The earl was exceedingly enraged, as well as his council, that the Ghent men ſhould keep poſſeſſion of Oudenarde. He knew not how to expel them from it, which made him ſorely repent, that notwithſtanding the peace he had entered into with Ghent, he had not more ſtrongly guarded it. He frequently wrote and ſent to them to ſurrender it to him; otherwiſe he would wage ſo ſevere a war that they ſhould for ever remember it.

The citizens of Ghent were unwilling to avow this act; for, if they had, the peace would have been broken. At laſt, ſome of the principal inhabitants, who wiſhed for peace and tranquillity, ſuch as John de Faucille, Guiſebert de Gûiſe, ſir Simon Bete and many others, undertook the buſineſs; and,

after twelve days negotiating, those from Ghent who were in Oudenarde returned home, and the town was surrendered to the earl's men. In order further to appease the earl, John Pruniaux was banished from Ghent and from Flanders for ever: his sentence stated it as the reason, that he had gone and taken possession of Oudenarde without the knowledge of the magistrates of Ghent.

Sir Philip de Mamines, sir Oliver d'Auterme, le Galois de Mannes, le bastard de Widringues, and all those who had been actors or abettors in the maiming the mariners of Ghent, were also banished the country. These banishments appeased both parties.

Pruniaux quitted Flanders, and went to Ath in Brabant. Sir Philip de Mamines went to Valenciennes in Hainault; but, when those of Ghent heard it, they worked upon the provost and jurats of Valenciennes, so that the provost, John Paris, prevailed on the knight quietly to leave the town: he departed of his own free will, and resided at Warlain, near Douay, until he heard better news.

The other knights and squires went from Flanders to Brabant, where they remained until more agreeable intelligence made them quit it.

As soon as the earl of Flanders had regained possession of Oudenarde, he sent thither numbers of workmen to repair the gates, towers and walls, which he made stronger than before: the ditches also were deepened.

All this was known at Ghent; but they took no

notice of it, leſt they ſhould be reprimanded for having infringed the peace.

The diſcontented, however, ſaid among themſelves; 'Let them work as long as they pleaſe in repairing Oudenarde, for, were it now of ſteel, it could not reſiſt us, whenever we may chooſe to take it.'

Although there was peace in Flanders, the earl had conſtant ſuſpicions of Ghent; for every day ſome tales were brought him reſpecting it: and ſimilar ones were told of him to the townſmen of Ghent.

John de Faucille went to reſide at Nazareth, a very handſome and ſtrong houſe of his a good league diſtant from Ghent. He diſſembled there as long as he was able, and would not be of the town-council, in order to avoid being marked by the earl. He alſo abſented himſelf very much from his attendance on the earl, to preſerve his popularity in Ghent, and thus, as it were, ſwimming between two ſtreams, kept himſelf as much neuter as he could.

During the time the earl was repairing Oudenarde, and had juſt finiſhed it, he was earneſt, by letters and meſſages to his couſin the duke of Brabant, to get poſſeſſion of John Pruniaux, who reſided at Ath. He managed the matter ſo well that he was delivered up, and brought to Lille, where he was beheaded, and his body placed on a wheel as a traitor. Such was the end of John Pruniaux.

At this ſame time, the earl came to Ypres, and held

held there ſeveral courts of juſtice, by whoſe judgments many wicked people were beheaded; ſuch as fullers and weavers, who had opened the gates to the men of Ghent, and ſlain the earl's knights, that others might from them take warning.

All this was told in Ghent, which made them more ſuſpicious than before, eſpecially the leaders of the expeditions to Oudenarde. They ſaid among themſelves; 'Certainly the earl will, if he can, deſtroy all of us. He loves us ſo well, he only wants our lives. Has he not put to death John Pruniaux? In truth, we muſt own that we acted very wrong in regard to John Pruniaux, when we ſuffered him to be baniſhed: we are guilty of his death; and, if they can catch us, ſuch an end as his awaits us. Let us be on our guard.'

Peter du Bois added; 'If you will be adviſed by me, there ſhall not a gentleman's houſe of any ſtrength remain in the country about Ghent; for by ſuch houſes we may all be deſtroyed, if we do not take care and provide a remedy.' The others anſwered, 'You ſay well; come quick, let us down with them all.'

Upon this, the captains, Peter du Bois, John Boule, Raſſe de Harzelle, John de Launoy and ſeveral others, made preparations for ſetting out from Ghent, which they did, and burnt and deſtroyed all the houſes of the gentlemen: whatever they found therein, they divided among themſelvs as fair booty. After this, they returned to Ghent; and none were bold enough to ſo ſay to them, You have done ill.

The

The gentlemen, knights and ſquires, who reſided at Lille with the earl, on hearing this, were much enraged, and with reaſon: they told the earl, that this outrage ought to be puniſhed, and the pride of the Ghent men humbled.

The earl gave to theſe knights and ſquires permiſſion to make war on Ghent, and revenge themſelves for the injuries they had ſuffered. They made alliances with many knights and ſquires of Flanders, and entreated their friends in Hainault to aſſiſt them, and choſe for their commander le Haſle de Flandres, the eldeſt baſtard ſon of the earl, a right valiant knight.

This Haſle de Flandres and his companions ſometimes fixed their quarters in Oudenarde, at others at Gavres, Aloſt or Dendremonde, and had frequent ſkirmiſhes with the Ghent men. They advanced up to the barriers of the town, and deſtroyed almoſt all the windmills which were around it, commiting other injuries on Ghent. They had with them a young knight from Hainault, well inclined to ſerve them, whoſe name was ſir James de Verchin, ſénéſchal of Hainault.

He performed many gallant deeds, and adventured himſelf ſometimes too raſhly, in tilting cloſe to the barriers, and twice or thrice won from them their helmets and croſs-bows. This ſir James de Verchin was very fond of arms, and would have greatly excelled if he had lived longer; but he died young, and in his bed, at the caſtle of Ombre, near Mortaigne, which was a great loſs.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.

THE NOBLES MAKE WAR UPON THE FLEMINGS.

THE men of Ghent had been very free in their jokes and mockeries of the noblemen and gentry of Flanders, but were afterwards ſorry for it, and had once intentions of ſending to duke Albert of Hainault, to requeſt he would recal his knights who were making war againſt them; but, on reconſidering the buſineſs, they thought it would only be loſt labour, for the duke would not interfere in it. They were unwilling alſo to anger him more, for they ſhould fare ill without his country; and if Hainault, Holland and Zealand were ſhut againſt them, they might conſider themſelves as ruined. They therefore gave up this, and followed other council, which was to ſend to thoſe knights and ſquires of Hainault who held poſſeſſions within Ghent or its dependancy, to come and ſerve them under pain of loſing their eſtates: they, however, paid no attention to their ſummons.

To this effect, they ſent to ſir Hervé, lord d'Antoing, who had an eſtate in Ghent, and was alſo conſtable of the caſtle, to aſſiſt them, or he would loſe the rights of his caſtlewick; and, becauſe he would not obey their ſummons, they razed his houſe of Vienne to the ground.

The lord d'Antoing ſent them word, he would cheerfully

cheerfully ſerve them at their expenſe, and to their ruin; that they were not to place any dependance on him, for he would always be their enemy, and oppoſe them in every inſtance; that he would not hold any thing of them, but from his lord the earl of Flanders, to whom he owed ſervice and obedience.

This lord kept well the promiſe he had made them; for he waged a mortal war againſt Ghent, and did them many injuries. He reinforced the caſtle with men and ſtores, by which means thoſe in Ghent were much annoyed.

On the other hand, the lord d'Anghien, whoſe name was Walter, though a young ſquire, but well inclined, did them much miſchief. The war was thus ſharply carried on during the whole ſeaſon. The Ghent men dared not venture out of their town but in large troops; for whenever they met their enemies, if in ſuperior numbers, they were all ſlain without mercy.

Thus was the war embittered between the earl of Flanders and Ghent, which afterwards coſt a hundred thouſad lives twice told; and with great difficulty could any end be put to it and peace reeſtabliſhed, for the leaders in Ghent knew they had done ſuch evil deeds againſt the earl of Flanders and the duke of Burgundy that they were perſuaded no treaty could be made or ſworn to, whatever the outward appearance of it might be, but that their lives would be ſacrificed.

This made them firm in their reſolutions, and reſolved to keep up the diviſion and war againſt the

the earl and gentlemen of Flanders: it alſo gave them the courage to fight deſperately, which, however, ſometimes ill befel them in their enterprizes, as you will hear related.

The earl of Flanders, who had fixed his reſidence at Lille, received daily information of the ill deeds of the men of Ghent, how they were deſtroying and burning the houſes of his nobles: he was ſore vexed, and ſaid he would take ſo great a revenge on Ghent, that he would put it in fire and flames, with all the inhabitants within it. In order to be more powerful, the earl ſummoned all the barons of Flanders, and gave up to them the whole country, the better to reſiſt the white hoods. He appointed two leaders, Galois de Mamines and Peter d'Eſtrevilles. Theſe two, with their company, bore the banner of the earl, and remained about three weeks between Oudenarde and Courtray, upon the Lys, where they did much damage.

When Raſſe de Harzelle was informed of this, he marched out of Ghent with the white hoods, to Deynſe, where he thought to meet the army of the earl: but, when they knew that the Ghent men were on their march, they retreated to Tournay, and ſtrengthened the town. They continued there, and in the neighbourhood of Damme, Orchies and Vorlam a conſiderable time, ſo that the merchants dared not go from Tournay to Douay for fear of them. It was reported, the Ghent men intended beſieging Lille and the earl within it; and for this purpoſe they would have formed an alliance with Bruges and Ypres. They had gained over Gra-

mont

mont and Courtray; but thoſe of Bruges and Ypres were irreſolute. They had diſagreed with the handicraft trades, declaring it would be a great folly to go ſo far to lay ſiege to Lille; for the earl, their lord, might form an alliance with the king of France, as he had formerly done, and receive from him much aſſiſtance.

Theſe doubts kept the principal towns of Flanders at this time from entering into the war, ſo that no ſiege was formed. To prevent the earl from entering into any treaty with his ſon-in-law the duke of Burgundy, they ſent ambaſſadors, with moſt amicable letters, to the king of France, to ſupplicate him, for the love of God, not to take any part to their diſadvantage; for their only wiſh was love, peace, obedience and ſervice; and that their lord had very wrongfully and wickedly oppreſſed and haraſſed them: that what they were now doing was only for the preſervation of their franchiſes, which their lord wanted to deſtroy.

The king was ſomewhat inclined in their favour, though he ſhewed not any appearance of it in public. The duke of Anjou, his brother, did the ſame; for, although the earl of Flanders was their couſin, he was not in their good graces, on account of having entertained the duke of Brittany for a long time much againſt their wills. They therefore troubled not themſelves about his affairs: neither did pope Clement, who ſaid, that God had ſent him this rod becauſe he was his enemy and would not acknowledge him as pope.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXII.

THE DEATH OF SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN, CONSTABLE OF FRANCE.

THE good conſtable of France, ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, had remained in Auvergne with many able men at arms. He had laid ſiege to Chateau neuf de Randon*, three leagues from the city of Mende†, and four from the town of Puy in Auvergne, in the caſtle of which he had ſhut up ſeveral Engliſh and Gaſcons, who had come from the country of Limouſin, where there were plenty of fortreſſes.

The conſtable made many ſevere attacks on the caſtle during the ſiege, and ſwore that he would never depart until he was the maſter of it. When there, he was ſeized with ſo great a ſickneſs that he kept his bed: this, however, did not prevent the ſiege from being continued: indeed, it was carried on by his army with greater eagerneſs.

Sir Bertrand's malady was ſo deadly that he fell a victim to it, which was a ſevere loſs to his friends and to the kingdom of France. His body was carried to the church of the Cordeliers of Puy in

* Chateau neuf de Randon,—a village in Lower Languedoc.

† Mende,—an ancient city in Lower Languedoc, twenty-eight leagues from Alby.

Auvergne,

Auvergne, where it remained one night; and on the morrow it was embalmed, conveyed to St. Denis in France and buried in a tomb very near that of king Charles of France, which the king had cauſed to be made in his life time. By his order, the body of ſir Bertrand, his conſtable, was placed at his feet; and his obſequies were performed with the ſame honours as if he had been his own ſon: the king's brothers, as well as great numbers of the nobility, attended.

By the death of ſir Bertrand, the office of conſtable became vacant; on which many councils were held to nominate a ſucceſſor. Several great barons of France were thought of: in particular, the lords de Cliſſon and de Coucy. The king of France appointed the lord de Coucy governor of all Picardy, and alſo gave him the domain of Mortaigne, which is a handſome heritage, ſituated between Tournay and Valenciennes.

Sir James de Verchin, the young ſénéſchal of Hainault, was turned out of it: he held it in ſucceſſion from his father, who had been lord of it for a long time. I ſay, therefore, the lord de Coucy was greatly in favour with the king of France, who was deſirous to nominate him conſtable: but the gallant knight excuſed himſelf with many reaſons, and refuſed to undertake ſo weighty a charge as that of conſtable, adding that ſir Oliver de Cliſſon was the fitteſt perſon of any, for he was a valiant, enterpriſing and prudent knight, well known to and beloved by the Bretons.

Things remained thus for ſome time, when the men

men at arms of ſir Bertrand returned to France; for the caſtle had ſurrendered the ſame day the conſtable had died; and the garriſon of it had gone to that of Ventadour.

When the king of France ſaw the men at arms of the conſtable he turned aſide for grief at the loſs of him whom he had ſo much loved: he gave to each of them a handſome preſent ſuitably to their ranks.

We will now leave this ſubject, and relate how the earl of Buckingham, youngeſt ſon of Edward III. of England, having aſſembled a large army of men at arms and archers, croſſed the ſea, and marched his army through France to Brittany.

CHAP. XXXIII.

THE DUKE OF BRITTANY REQUESTS SUCCOUR FROM THE KING OF ENGLAND.—THE EARL OF BUCKINGHAM, YOUNGEST SON TO THE LATE KING, IS APPOINTED COMMANDER OF THE EXPEDITION.

YOU have before heard, that when the duke of Brittany left England, king Richard and his uncles promiſed him aid of men at arms and archers, which they performed with ill ſucceſs; for this was the expedition under the command of ſir John Arundel, who with two hundred men at

arms were ſhipwrecked, he himſelf drowned with fourſcore men at arms and as many archers, and from which ſir Hugh Calverley and ſir Thomas Trivet moſt narrowly eſcaped.

This unfortunate event put an end to the expedition, which not being known to the duke of Brittany, he and his council were exceedingly ſurpriſed, and could not conceive what was become of the Engliſh; for they were very anxious to profit by their aſſiſtance, in the ſharp war which was carrying on againſt the duke by ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, ſir Guy de Laval, ſir Oliver du Gueſclin, the count de Longueville, the lord de Rochefort, and the French on the frontiers of his duchy.

The duke was adviſed to ſend ſome able men to England, to know why the reinforcements were not ſent according to promiſe, and to haſten them over, for they were in great need of them.

The lord de Beaumanoir and ſir Euſtace de la Houſſaye were entreated by the duke and his nobility to make this journey to England: they anſwered, they would willingly comply. Letters were given to them by the duke and the nobles of the country; when having departed, they embarked at Vannes, with a favourable wind, and arrived at Southampton.

They there diſembarked, and, having mounted their horſes, went to London. It was about Whitſuntide, in the year of grace 1380.

The arrival of theſe two lords was ſoon notified to the king and to his three uncles. The Whitſun feaſt being arrived, the king went to Windſor to celebrate

celebrated it, attended by his uncles and great numbers of the barons and knights of England. The two ambaſſadors went thither alſo, and were graciouſly received by the king and the barons, when they preſented their letters to his majeſty and his uncles.

After they had peruſed them, they knew the great need the duke of Brittany had for aſſiſtance, from the earneſt entreaties he and the country made for it.

The ambaſſadors then firſt heard of the death of ſir John Arundel and his companions, who had periſhed at ſea on their voyage to Brittany. The duke of Lancaſter made excuſes, ſaying, it was not owing to any fault of the king or his miniſters, but ill fortune at ſea, againſt which none can make head when God wills it ſo. The ambaſſadors, therefore, fully acquitted the king, and greatly lamented the deaths of thoſe knights and ſquires who had periſhed.

When the feaſts of Whitſuntide were over, a parliament was holden at Weſtminſter, to which were ſummoned all the members of the council.

Whilſt theſe things were paſſing, ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, earl of Huntingdon, departed this life in the city of London. He was buried in the church of the Auſtin friars*. The king ordered his obſequies to be moſt honourably performed, and they were attended by a great number of the prelates

* Auſtin friars. See Gough's Sepulchral Monuments.

and barons of England: the biſhop of London ſung maſs.

Soon after the parliament was opened, the lord Thomas, youngeſt ſon of the late king of England, and many barons, knights and ſquires of the realm, were ordered to croſs the ſea to Calais; and, if God ſhould permit, they were to march through France, with three thouſand men at arms and as many archers, ſo that the lord Thomas might arrive in Brittany, attended by earls, barons and knights ſuitably to the dignity of a king's ſon.

He undertook a bold taſk to paſs through the kingdom of France, which is ſo extenſive and noble, and which has ſuch gallant chivalry and valiant men at arms.

When every thing relative to this expedition had been diſcuſſed and finally arranged, the king of England and his uncles wrote letters to the duke of Brittany and to the nobles of the country, informing them in part of their will, what had been determined on by the parliament, and that for a certainty the earl of Buckingham would this ſeaſon croſs the ſea to march to their aid.

The king of England ſhewed the ambaſſadors many honours, and gave them very rich preſents, as did alſo his uncles, when they ſet out on their departure for Brittany. They preſented their letters to the duke, who, having opened and read them, ſhewed them to the ſtates of his country, who were ſatisfied with their contents. The king of England and his uncles did not delay this expedition, but ſent ſummons to all thoſe who had been

been ſelected to attend the earl of Buckingham; the barons to aſſemble in one place, and the knights in another. They had their wages paid them at Dover for three months, which were to commence as ſoon as they ſhould land at Calais, as well for the men at arms as the archers, and their paſſage over was given to them. They croſſed in ſmall parties to Calais, and were upwards of fifteen days before the whole had there landed.

Thoſe of Boulogne having noticed ſuch large bodies of men at arms continually croſſing from Dover to Calais, gave notice of it to all the country and the different garriſons, that they might not be ſurpriſed.

When this intelligence was known in the Boulonnois, the Terouennois, and in the county of Gûines, all the knights and ſquires of thoſe countries placed their wealth in different ſtrong towns, to avoid loſing it.

The governors of Boulogne, Ardres, de la Montoire, d'Eſperleck, de Tournehem, de Nordt, de Liques, and of other caſtles on the frontiers, exerted themſelves greatly in ſtrengthening and victualling their garriſons; for they knew, that ſince the Engliſh had croſſed over with ſo large a fleet they would be attacked.

News of this armament was carried to the king of France, who reſided at Paris. He ſent immediate orders to the lord de Coucy, who at that time was at St. Quentin, to provide himſelf with men at arms, and to march to Picardy, to re-

inforce all the towns, cities and caſtles in that province.

The lord de Coucy duly obeyed the king's orders, and iſſued his ſummons at Peronne in the Vermandois, for the inſtant aſſembling all knights and ſquires of Artois, Vermandois and Picardy. The lord de Saimpi was at that time governor of Ardres, and ſir John de Bouillé of Boulogne.

The earl of Buckingham arrived at Calais with his army three days before Magdalen-day, in the month of July 1380.

CHAP. XXXIV.

THE EARL OF BUCKINGHAM MARCHES WITH HIS ARMY FROM CALAIS.

THE garriſon in Calais were much rejoiced at the arrival of the earl of Buckingham, for they well knew it would not be long before they began their march. The earl having refreſhed himſelf for two days at Calais, on the third departed, and took the field, following the road towards Marquignes*. It is proper I ſhould name

* Marquignes—I ſuppoſe muſt be Marquiſe, a town in the Boulonnois, between Calais and Boulogne, five leagues from Calais.

to you the banners and pennons under the earl's command: firſt, the earl himſelf, and the earl of Stafford who had married his niece, a daughter of the lord de Coucy, rode with diſplayed banners; the earl of Devonſhire, the lord Deſpencer who was conſtable of the army, the lord Fitzwalter marſhal, the lord Baſſet, the lord Bourchier, the lord Ferrars, the lord Morley, the lord Darcey, ſir William Windſor, ſir Hugh Calverley, ſir Hugh Haſtings and ſir Hugh de la Sente*, advanced with their pennons; lord Thomas Percy, ſir Thomas Trivet, ſir William Clinton, ſir Evan de Fitzwarren, ſir Hugh Tyrrel, the lord de la Warr, ſir Euſtace and ſir John de Harbeſton, ſir William Farrington, the lord de Braoſe, ſir William Fabre, ſir John and ſir Nicholas d'Ambreticourt, ſir John Macé, ſir Thomas Camois, ſir Ralph ſon to the lord Neville, ſir Henry baſtard of Ferrars, ſir Hugh Broc, ſir Geoffry Worſeley, ſir Thomas Weſt, the lord de Saincte More, David Holgrave, Huguelin de Calverley baſtard, Bernard de Coderieres and ſeveral more.

Theſe men at arms rode on in handſome array, but did not march farther the day they had left Calais than to Marquiſe, where they halted, to attend to their affairs, and to hold a council which road they ſhould take to accompliſh their expedition; for there were ſeveral among them who had

* De la Sente. Q.

never been in France before: in particular, the king's ſon, and many barons and knights.

It was therefore but reaſonable, that thoſe who were acquainted with the kingdom of France, and having formerly paſſed through, and had ſeveral engagements in it, ſhould have ſuch weight given to their advice and opinions as redounded to their honour. True it is, that in former times, when the Engliſh invaded France, they had made a regulation, for the leaders to ſwear, in the preſence of the king and his council, to obſerve two things; that to no one, except to themſelves, would they reveal the ſecrets of their councils, their intended march, nor what might be their intentions; and ſecondly, that they would never agree to any treaty with the enemy without the knowledge and conſent of the king and his council.

When theſe barons, knights and ſquires, with their men, had remained for three days at Marquiſe, and their whole force had joined them from Calais, the captains, having well conſidered their line of march, departed, and took the road to Ardres. They halted before the caſtle of Ardres, to ſhew themſelves to the garriſon within; when the earl of Buckingham having created the earl of Devonſhire and the lord Morley knights, theſe two lords firſt diſplayed their banners.

The earl of Buckingham created alſo the following knights: the ſon of the lord Fitzwalter, ſir Roger Strange, ſir John d'Ypre, ſir John Cole, ſir James Tyrrel, ſir Thomas Rameſtone, ſir John Neville,

Neville, ſir Thomas Roſelie. The whole army took up their quarters at Hoſque*, when the above knights were made. The van-guard then marched to a ſtrong houſe called Folant†, ſituated upon a river. There was a ſquire within it of the name of Robert, to whom the houſe belonged. He was a good man at arms, and had well garriſoned it with ſtores and hardy ſoldiers, whom he had picked up in the neighbourhood, to the amount of forty, who ſhewed every intention to defend themſelves well.

Theſe barons and knights, eager to do honour to their new knighthood, ſurrounded the tower of Folant, and immediately began the attack; but it was well defended by thoſe within. Many a gallant deed was performed; and thoſe in the fort ſhot well and continually, by which many of the aſſailants were killed and wounded who ventured too near. There were in the fort ſome good croſs-bowmen, whom the governor of St. Omer had ſent thither at the ſquire's requeſt; for he had imagined the Engliſh would paſs near his houſe, and was reſolved to defend it to the utmoſt of his power, which he did, for he behaved gallantly.

The earl of Devonſhire, whilſt he was on the ditch, his banner diſplayed before him, ſpoke out bravely, which greatly encouraged his men, ſaying, 'What, my lords! ſhall we ſo much diſgrace our new honours as to remain all the day before this pigeon-houſe? The ſtrong places and caſtles in

* Hoſque. Q. † Folant. Q.

France

France may well hold out againſt us, when ſuch a place as this ſtops us. Advance, advance! let us prove our knighthoods.' Thoſe who heard him took proper notice of what he ſaid, and, ſparing themſelves leſs than before, leaped into the ditches, and made for the walls, the archers ſhooting ſo briſkly that ſcarcely any dared ſhew themſelves on the parapets.

Several were killed and wounded, and the lower court taken and burnt. At length, the whole garriſon were made priſoners; but, though they had defended themſelves well, none were mortally wounded. Thus was the houſe of Folant gained, and Robert Folant with his garriſon made priſoners, by the earl of Devonſhire and his men. The whole diviſion took up their quarters on the banks of the river of Hoſque, to wait for ſir William Windſor, who commanded the rear-guard. He came thither in the evening. On the morrow, they marched off together, and advanced as far as Eſperleck, where they lodged themſelves

The governor of St. Omer, finding the enemy ſo near, doubled his guards, and ordered two thouſand men to be in readineſs the whole night, that the enemy might not ſurpriſe the town. The next day, the Engliſh decamped, about ſix o'clock, and advanced in battle-array before St. Omer. The inhabitants, hearing of their march, armed themſelves, according to the orders they had received, and drew up in the market-place, from whence they went to the gates, towers and battlements, with a determined reſolution to reſiſt, for they

they had heard that the Engliſh would attack the town; but they had no ſuch intentions, for, as it was very ſtrong, they might loſe more than they could gain.

The earl of Buckingham, however, who had never before been in France, wiſhed to ſee St. Omer, becauſe it appeared from its gates, walls, towers and ſteeples, to be a handſome place. He drew up and halted his army on a hill about half a league from it, where he remained for three hours. While there, ſome of the young knights and ſquires, mounting their courſers, ſpurred them up to the barriers and demanded to tilt with the knights in the town; but, no anſwers being made to them, they returned back to the army.

The day the earl came before St. Omer, he made more knights; among whom were ſir Ralph Neville, ſir Bartholomew Bourchier, ſir Thomas Camois, ſir Foulke Corbet, ſir Thomas d'Angleere, ſir Ralph Patipas, ſir Lewis St. Aubin and ſir John Paulet. Theſe new knights, in the firſt vigour of chivalry, mounted their horſes, and galloped up to the gates, calling on the knights within to tilt with them; but they experienced the ſame neglect as the others had done.

When the army ſaw that the French lords in St. Omer made not any attempt to come out to meet them, they continued their march, and came that day to Eſquilles, between St. Omer and Terouenne, where they took up their quarters for the night. On the morrow, they departed, and made for Terouenne.

The

The French garriſons in the counties of Boulogne, Artois and Guines, having obſerved the diſpoſitions of the Engliſh, that they continued their march without ſtopping at any place, mutually informed each other of their intentions to follow them, ſince much might be gained by it: they therefore aſſembled, under the pennons of the lord de Franſures and the lord de Saimpi, to the number of more than two hundred lances.

They purſued the Engliſh army; but, though they kept cloſe to them, the Engliſh marched in ſuch compact order, they were not put into the leaſt diſorder, and their enemies could not attack them, without the riſk of ſuffering a total defeat. Theſe French knights and ſquires, however, at times fell upon the Engliſh foragers, ſo that they dared not forage but in large companies.

The Engliſh paſſed Terouenne without attempting any thing, for the lords de Saimpi and de Franſures were within it. They marched on towards Bethune, where they halted for a day; and I will tell you the reaſon. You have before heard how king Richard, by the advice of his uncles and council, had ſent into Germany ſir Simon Burley, to the emperor*, to demand his ſiſter in marriage. This knight ſo well managed the buſineſs that the emperor, by advice of his council and the great lords of his court, complied with the requeſt: but he had ſent, with ſir Simon Burley, the duke of Saxony, firſt to Luxembourg and then to England,

* Winceſlaus VI. emperor.

to

to obſerve that kingdom, in order that his ſiſter might have a juſt account of it, ſo that, if agreeable, the marriage might be concluded.

The cardinal of Ravenna was at that time in England, and, being an Urbaniſt, was converting the Engliſh to the ſame way of thinking: he was waiting alſo the arrival of the above-mentioned duke. At the entreaties of the emperor and the duke of Brabant, he and all his company obtained liberty to paſs through France to Calais. They therefore travelled by way of Tournay, Lille and Bethune, from whence they came to viſit the earl of Buckingham and his barons, who received the duke of Saxony and his ſuite moſt honourably. The Germans continued their journey through Aire and St. Omer, and from thence to Calais.

The earl of Buckingham marched his army before Liques, and encamped that ſame day at Bouhain les Bouiſſieres; but they were conſtantly followed by the lords de Saimpi and de Franſures with their forces. In the morning, they advanced nearer to Bethune. There were in that town a numerous garriſon of men at arms, knights and ſquires, whom the lord de Coucy had ſent thither; ſuch as the lord de Hangeſt, ſir John and ſir Triſtan de Roye, ſir Geoffry de Charny, ſir Guy de Harcourt and many more. The army paſſed by Bethune without making any attempt to attack it, and lay at Doncheres*.

* Q. if not Donchy, a village near Arras.

In

In the evening the lords de Saimpi and de Franſures entered Bethune, and the next day went to Arras, where they met the lord de Coucy, who received them very politely, inquiring news from them, and which road the Engliſh had taken. They replied, they had lodged the preceding night at Doncheres; that they marched with very great prudence, for they conſtantly kept in cloſe order. 'It is then clear,' anſwered the lord de Coucy, 'that they wiſh for battle; which they ſhall have, if the king our lord will truſt us, before they have finiſhed their march.'

The earl marched by Arras, in order of battle, continuing his route without doing any thing: he took up his quarters at Anet*, on the morrow at Miraumont‡, and the next day at Clery on the Somme.

The lord de Coucy, who reſided at Arras, on hearing they had gone this road, ſent the lord Hangeſt to Braye ſur Somme‡, and with him thirty lances, knights and ſquires: he ordered to Peronne ſir James de Verchin, ſénéſchal of Hainault, the lord de Hamireth, ſir John de Roye and ſeveral others: he himſelf went to St. Quentin. He ſent the lord de Clery, with others, into the Vermandois; for he was anxious that no loſs ſhould be ſuffered through any negligence on his part.

---

* Anet. Q.

† ‡ Miraumont,—Braye ſur Somme,—villages in Picardy, election of Peronne.

CHAP. XXXV.

THE LORD DE BRIMEU, HIS SONS AND HIS MEN ARE TAKEN PRISONERS BY THE ENGLISH.—THE GARRISON OF PERONNE ARE DRIVEN BACK INTO THAT TOWN.

THE night the Engliſh had quartered themſelves at Clery on the Somme, ſome knights of the army, ſuch as ſir Thomas Trivet, ſir William Clinton, ſir Evan Fitzwarren, at the inſtigation of the lord Delawarr, who was well acquainted with the whole country, and knew that the lord de Coucy was with a large body of men at arms in the town of Arras, reſolved to march from the army, at early dawn, with the foragers, to ſee if they ſhould meet with any adventure worth attending to; for they wiſhed to perform ſome deed of arms. As they had planned, ſo did they execute; and about thirty lances ſet out after the foragers, in ſearch of adventures.

This ſame day, the lord de Coucy had left Arras with a large body of men, and had taken the road to St. Quentin. When they were on their march, the lord de Brimeu, his ſons, with about thirty ſpears, quitted the army of the lord de Coucy, anxious to perform ſome gallant act. Theſe two bodies of Engliſh and French, meeting in the plains, ſaw a combat was invetiable; they therefore ſtruck

ſtruck ſpurs into their horſes, and galloped towards each other, ſhouting their cries of war. On the firſt ſhock, ſeveral were unhorſed, killed and wounded on both ſides. Many handſome deeds were done: they diſmounted, and began to thruſt with their ſpears, each party behaving bravely. This mode of combat continued about an hour, and no one could ſay to whom would be the victory, but in the end the Engliſh won the field. Sir Thomas Trivet made priſoners the lord de Brimeu, and his two ſons, John and Lewis, and ſixteen men at arms: the reſt ſaved themſelves: and the Engliſh returned to their army with their priſoners.

They remained ſome little time in the neighbourhood of Peronne, having heard from their priſoners, that the lord de Coucy was in that town with upwards of a thouſand lances, and they knew not if he wiſhed to offer them battle.

This day the lord Delawarr, with Fierabras his baſtard-brother, ſir Evan Fitzwarren and ſeveral others, quitting the army, haſtened to Mont St. Quentin, where they poſted themſelves in ambuſcade; for they had learnt that the ſénéſchal of Hainault was with a ſtrong body of men at arms in Peronne, and they knew him to be ſo ſelf-ſufficient that he would not fail to ſally out, which in truth he did.

The van-guard ordered ten men at arms to march to Peronne; among whom were Thierry de Soumain, Fierabras, ſir Hugh Calverley and Hopoquin Hay, mounted on their chargers. They galloped up to the barriers, where there were at leaſt fifty

ſpears

ſpears with the ſénéſchal of Hainault; who, think-ing to catch theſe gallopers, ordered the barriers to be thrown open, and immediately began a purſuit after them, as they retreated towards their am-buſcade.

When thoſe who had placed themſelves in am-buſh ſaw the French purſuing their men, they diſ-covered themſelves; but it was ſomewhat too ſoon, for when the ſénéſchal perceived this large body ſo well mounted, he ſounded a retreat, and the horſes then knew the effect of ſpurs: very opportunely did theſe lords find the barriers open.

They were, however, ſo cloſely followed, that ſir Richard de Marqueillies, ſir Louis de Vertaing, Honard de la Honarderie, Vital de St. Hilaire, with ten other men at arms, remained priſoners to the Engliſh: the others eſcaped. When the Engliſh learnt, that the ſénéſchal of Hainault, the lord de Hamireth, the lord de Clery, with twenty other knights, had eſcaped, they cried out;—'God! what a fortunate event would it have been, if we had taken them, for they would have paid us forty thouſand francs.' They returned to the army, and nothing more was done that day.

The army remained for three days at Clery ſur Somme, and in that neighbourhood. On the fourth, they marched away, and came to the abbey of Vaucelle*, three leagues from Cambray, and the next day nearer St. Quentin. This day, about

* Vaucelle,—on the Scheld, near to Crevecœur.

thirty ſpears attached to the duke of Burgundy had ſet out from Arras for St. Quentin. Sir Thomas Trivet, ſir Evan Fitzwarren, the lord Delawarr, and ſeveral others who had been from the van-guard with the foragers, as they were about to fix on their quarters, fell in with theſe Burgundians, when a battle enſued: but it did not laſt long, for the Burgundians were ſoon diſperſed, one here, another there, and all tried to ſave themſelves as well as they could. Sir John de Mornay, however, ſtood his ground in good order, with his pennon before him, and fought valiantly, but at laſt was taken, and ten men of his company. The Engliſh then marched to Fourſons, two leagues from Amiens, where the van-guard quartered itſelf.

CHAP. XXXVI.

THE ENGLISH BURN AND DESPOIL CHAMPAGNE.—THEY MEET WITH VARIOUS ADVENTURES ON THEIR MARCH, AND MAKE MANY PRISONERS.

ON the enſuing morning, when the earl of Buckingham and his army had heard maſs, they began their march towards St. Quentin; in which town there were numbers of men at arms, but they did not ſally forth. Some of the light troops galloped up to the barriers, and ſoon returned; for the army continued its march, without halting, until

until it arrived at Origny St. Benoiſte* and the adjacent villages. In the town of Origny, there was a handſome nunnery, the abbeſs of which at that time happened to be aunt-in-law to the lord Delawarr, at whoſe entreaty the nunnery and the whole town were reſpited from being burnt and pillaged: the earl was lodged in the abbey. That evening and the following morning, there were many ſkirmiſhes at Ribemont, which was hard by, when ſeveral were ſlain and wounded on each ſide.

In the morning, the army diſlodged from Origny, came to Crecy, and paſſed Vaux below Laon, fixing their quarters at Siſſonne†. The next day, they croſſed the river Aiſne at Pont à Vaire, and came to Hermonville and Coumiſſy, four leagues from Rheims, without meeting with any forage on their march.

Every thing had been driven or carried into the towns and ſtrong places, the king of France having abandoned to his own men at arms whatever they could find in the open country: the Engliſh, therefore, ſuffered great diſtreſs for want of food. They determined to ſend a herald to Rheims, to open a treaty with the inhabitants, for them to ſend proviſions to the army, ſuch as cattle, bread and wine.

The inhabitants refuſed to enter into any negotiation, and, in their reply, ſaid, they muſt make the beſt of it. This anſwer ſo much enraged them

* Origny St. Benoîte,—a town in Picardy, on the Oiſe, three leagues from St. Quentin.

† Siſſonne,—a town in Picardy, dioceſe of Laon.

that, in one week, the light troops burnt upwards of ſixty villages dependant on Rheims. The Engliſh heard that the people of Rheims had ſecured ſix thouſand ſheep in the ditches of the town, thinking them ſafe there: the van-guard advanced thither, and made their men deſcend into the ditches and drive out the ſheep, without any one daring to iſſue from the town to prevent them, or even appearing on the bulwarks; for the archers, being poſted on the banks of the ditch, ſhot ſo ſharply that no one ventured to ſhew himſelf: the Engliſh gained ſeveral thouſand head of ſheep. They ſent to inform the townſmen, they would burn all the corn in the fields, unleſs they ranſomed it by ſending them bread and wine. The inhabitants were frightened by this threat, and ſent the army from ten to ſixteen loads of bread and wine: by this means, the corn and oats were ſaved from being burnt. The Engliſh marched by Rheims in order of battle to Beaumont ſur Veſle*, for they had croſſed the river below Rheims. On their departure from Beaumont, the Engliſh rode along the river Marne, to ſeek a paſſage, and came to Condé ſur Marne, where they found the bridge broken down; but, as the ſupporters ſtill remained, they ſought for planks and beams, with which they rebuilt the bridge, croſſed the river, and quartered themſelves in the villages above Marne; and on the enſuing day, they came before the town of

* Beaumont ſur Veſle,—near Rheims.

Vertus,

Vertus*, when there was a grand ſkirmiſh in front of the caſtle, in which many were wounded.

The earl of Buckingham was lodged in the abbey. During the night, the town was burnt, except the abbey, which, from the earl lodging in it, was ſaved; otherwiſe it would infallibly have ſuffered the ſame fate, for the townſmen had retreated into the caſtle, and would not ranſom it. The army marched off the following day, and paſſed by the caſtle of Moymer, which is the inheritance of the lord de Chaſtillon. The ſkirmiſhers advanced to the barriers, and then paſſed on and took up their quarters for the night at Pelange, making for the city of Troyes, and the next day at Plancy ſur Aube†. The lord de Chateauneuf and John de Chateauneuf his brother, with Remond St. Marſin, Gaſcons, and ſome Engliſh, about forty ſpears in the whole, rode from the army to ſeek adventures, but met with none, which vexed them much. On their return, they ſaw in the plain a body of men at arms riding towards Troyes: it was the lord de Hangeſt and his men: the Engliſh and Gaſcons immediately ſpurred their horſes to come up with them. The lord de Hangeſt had well obſerved them, and, doubting they were in greater numbers than they appeared, ſaid to his men; 'Make for Plancy and ſave yourſelves; for

* Vertus,—a town in Champagne, twelve leagues from Rheims.

† Plancy ſur Aube,—near Troyes.

theſe Engliſh have diſcovered us, and their main army is not far off: let us put ourſelves in ſafety in the caſtle of Plancy.' They rode in that direction, and the Engliſh after them.

There was a valiant man at arms from Hainault in the troop of the lord Delawarr, called Peter Berton, who fixing his lance in its reſt, and being well mounted, came up with the lord de Hangeſt, who was flying before him, and gave him ſuch a blow on the back with his lance that he almoſt drove him out of the ſaddle; but the lord de Hangeſt neither loſt his ſeat nor ſtirrups, though Peter Berton kept the iron hard at his back; and in this manner did they arrive at Plancy.

Straight at the entrance of the caſtle the lord de Hangeſt leaped from his horſe, and got into the ditch. Thoſe within it were anxious to ſave him, and ran to the barriers, where there was a grand ſkirmiſh; for the garriſon kept ſhooting briſkly, being very good croſs-bowmen; and ſeveral valiant deeds were done on each ſide. With great difficulty the lord de Hangeſt was ſaved. He fought gallantly on entering the caſtle; for reinforcements from the van-guard were continually arriving. The lord Delawarr, ſir Thomas Trivet, ſir Hugh Calverley, came thither, and the conflict was great: there were upwards of thirty of the French killed and wounded, and the lower court of the caſtle burnt. The caſtle itſelf was warmly attacked on all ſides, but well defended: the mills of Plancy were burnt and deſtroyed. The whole army then

retired

retired, paſſed the river Aube at Pont à l'Ange, and marched towards Valant ſur Seine. The lord de Hangeſt had a very narrow eſcape.

This ſame day the captains of the van-guard, ſir Thomas Trivet, ſir Hugh Calverley, the lord Delawarr, the baſtard his brother, Peter Berton and many others, made an excurſion from the army, and met ſir John de Roye, with about twenty ſpears of the duke of Burgundy who were going to Troyes. The Engliſh, on ſeeing them ſpurred their horſes; for the French were making off, as not in ſufficient numbers to wait for them. The g eater part did eſcape; and ſir John de Roye, with others, got within the barriers of Troyes, which at the time chanced to be open. On their return, they captured four of his men who could not ſave themſelves: among whom was a ſquire to the duke of Burgundy, called Guion Goufer, an expert man at arms. His horſe was much heated, ſo that he had diſmounted, and, having placed himſelf againſt a walnut tree, fought valiantly two Engliſhmen, who preſſed him hard, crying out to him in Engliſh to ſurrender; but he underſtood them not. Fierabras, on his return from the purſuit, arriving at the ſpot, ſaid to the ſquire in French, 'Surrender thyſelf.' On hearing this, he replied, 'Art thou a gentleman?' The baſtard rejoined, he was. 'I then ſurrender myſelf to thee,' preſenting him his ſword and gauntlet; for which the Engliſh would have killed him when he was in the baſtard's hands, and they told him he was not very courteous thus to carry from them their priſoner, but the baſtard was

ſtronger than them. Nevertheleſs this affair was, in the evening, brought before the marſhals, who, having well conſidered it, determined he ſhould remain to the baſtard, who that evening ranſomed him, taking his word for the payment, and ſent him on the morrow to Troyes. The whole army were quartered at Valant ſur Seine, and the next day croſſing the Seine at a ford, came to a village one league from Troyes, called Bernare-Saint-Simple, where the lords and captains held many councils.

CHAP. XXXVII.

THE ENGLISH COME BEFORE TROYES.—A SKIRMISH AT ONE OF THE GATES.—THEY TAKE A FORT WHICH THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY HAD ERECTED ON THE OUTSIDE.—KING CHARLES PRACTISES WITH THE INHABITANTS OF NANTES.

THE duke of Burgundy was in the city of Troyes, and had fixed on that place for the rendezvous of his forces. His intentions were to fight the Engliſh between the rivers Seine and Yonne; and the barons, knights and ſquires of France did not wiſh for any thing better; but Charles of France, doubtful of the fortune of the war, would not give his permiſſion ſo to do. He recollected too well the great loſſes his nobles had formerly ſuffered from the victories of the Engliſh, and would never allow

allow them to fight unleſs the advantages were very conſiderable on their ſide. There were with the duke of Burgundy, in Troyes, the duke of Bourbon, the duke of Bar, the count d'Eu, the lord de Coucy, ſir John de Vienne admiral of France, the lord de Vienne and de Sainte Croix, ſir James de Vienne, ſir Walter de Vienne, the lord de la Tremouille, the lord de Vergy, the lord de Rougemont, the lord de Hambue, the ſénéſchal of Hainault, the lord de Saimpi, the baron des Barres, the lord de Roye, the viſcount d'Aſſi, ſir William baſtard de Langres, with upwards of two thouſand knights and ſquires. I was informed, that the lord de la Tremouille was ſent by the duke and the other lords to Paris, to entreat the king to allow them to fight; and he was not returned at the time the Engliſh came before Troyes.

The lords of France, doubting the Engliſh would not paſs by without coming to look at them, had erected, about a bow-ſhot from the gates of Troyes, a large redoubt of great beams of timber, which might hold about a thouſand men at arms: it was made of good ſtrong wood, and well built.

All the captains of the Engliſh army were ſummoned to a council, to conſider in what manner they ſhould act the enſuing day. It was reſolved, that all the lords and knights ſhould march, fully armed with their banners and pennons diſplayed, before Troyes: they were to draw up in the plain, and to ſend their heralds to offer battle to thoſe in the town.

They armed themſelves, therefore, on the morrow,

row, and, being formed in three battalions, advanced into the plain before Troyes, where they halted. The two heralds, Gloceſter and Aquitaine, were called, when the earl of Buckingham ſaid to them; 'You will go to Troyes, and tell the lords within the city, that we are come from England in ſearch of deeds of arms: wherever we think they can be found, there we ſhall demand them: and, becauſe we know that a part of the lillies and chivalry of France repoſe in the town of Troyes, we have purpoſely come this road. If they wiſh to ſay any thing to us, they will find us in the open plain in the form and manner in which you ſhall leave us, and in ſuchwiſe as we ought to meet our enemies.'

The heralds replied, 'My lord, we ſhall obey your commands.'

They then ſet off, and rode to Troyes. The entrance of the redoubt was opened to them, where they ſtopped; for they could not get to the gate of the town from the numbers of men at arms and croſs-bowmen iſſuing forth, and drawing up before this redoubt. The two heralds wore the emblazoned arms of the earl of Buckingham: they were aſked by the lords, what they wanted: they anſwered, they wiſhed, if it were poſſible, to ſpeak with the duke of Burgundy.

During the time the heralds were endeavouring to deliver their meſſage to the duke of Burgundy, the Engliſh were arranging their battalions; for they looked on a battle as certain. All who were deſirous of knighthood were called: firſt came ſir Thomas Trivet, with his banner rolled up, to the earl

earl of Buckingham, and ſaid; 'My lord, if you pleaſe, I will this day diſplay my banner; for, thanks to God, I have a ſufficient revenue to ſupport the ſtate which a banner requires.' 'It is highly pleaſing to us,' replied the earl: then, taking the banner by the ſtaff, he gave it back into his hands, ſaying, 'Sir Thomas, God grant you may ſhew your valour here, and every where elſe.' Sir Thomas took his banner, and, having diſplayed it, gave it to one of his ſquires in whom he had great confidence, and went to the van-guard; for he was there ſtationed by orders from the lord Latimer and the lord Fitzwalter, captain and conſtable.

The earl then created the following knights: ſir Peter Berton, ſir John and ſir Thomas Paulet, ſir John Stingulie, ſir Thomas Dortingues, ſir John Vaſſecoq, ſir John Braſie, ſir John Brauine, ſir Henry Vernier, ſir John Colville, ſir William Everat, ſir Nicholas Stingulie and ſir Hugh de Lunit. They advanced to the van battalion, in order to have their ſhare of the firſt blows.

A very gallant ſquire from the country of Savoy was then called, who had before been requeſted to be made a knight at St. Omer and at Ardres: his name was Ralp de Gruyeres, ſon to the count de Gruyeres: when the earl ſaid to him, 'We ſhall to-day, if it pleaſe God, have an engagement, and I will make you a knight.' The ſquire excuſed himſelf, ſaying, 'God give you all the good and honour you wiſh me; but I will never be a knight until my natural lord, the earl of Savoy, ſhall confer

confer it upon me in battle.' He was not preſſed farther on this ſubject.

It was a pleaſure to obſerve the order of battle in which the Engliſh were drawn up; and the French were buſy in ſtrengthening their forts, for they concluded that at leaſt there would be ſome ſkirmiſhes, and that ſuch warriors as the Engliſh would not depart without a nearer examination of them.

The French formed themſelves handſomely; and the duke of Burgundy was abroad, with his battle-axe in his hand, armed from head to foot: he paſſed in review all the knights and ſquires as they marched to the fort; and the crowd was ſo great, there was not any paſſing, nor could the heralds arrive as far as the duke to deliver the meſſage with which they had been charged.

To the words which the earl of Buckingham had delivered to the heralds, Gloceſter and Aquitaine, others were added; for, on the evening when the lords had held their council, they told the heralds; 'You will carry this meſſage, and tell the duke of Burgundy, that the duke and country of Brittany in conjunction have ſent to the king of England, for ſupport and aid againſt certain knights and barons of Brittany in rebellion againſt the ſaid duke, whom they refuſe to obey as their lord, as the better diſpoſed part of the country do, but carry on war, in which they are ſupported by the king of France. On this account, the king of England is reſolved to aſſiſt the duke and the country, and has ordered his fair uncle the earl of Buckingham,

with

with a large body of men at arms, to march to Brittany for this purpoſe. They landed at Calais, and, having marched through the kingdom of France, are now ſo much in the heart of it as to be arrived before the city of Troyes, wherein they know are great numbers of the nobility: in particular, the duke of Burgundy, ſon of the late king of France and brother to the king now on the throne: therefore, the lord Thomas of Buckingham, ſon to the late king of England, demands a battle.'

The heralds requeſted to have this put down in writing, which they were promiſed to have on the morrow; but, when they again aſked for it, they had changed their opinions, and no letters were given: but they were told to go, and ſay what they had heard, as they were of ſufficient credit; 'and, if they chooſe, they will believe you.'

The heralds could not approach near enough to the duke to deliver their meſſage, nor obtain any anſwer.

The young Engliſh knights had already begun to ſkirmiſh, which had troubled every thing, and ſome French knights and men at arms ſaid to the heralds, 'Gentlemen, you are in a hazardous ſituation, for the common people of this town are very wicked.'

This hint made them return without doing any thing. We will now relate the beginning of the ſkirmiſh. In the firſt place, there was an Engliſh ſquire, a native of the biſhoprick of Lincoln, who was an excellent man at arms, and there gave proofs of his courage. I know not if he had made any vow; but with his lance in its reſt, his target

on

on his neck, he ſpurred his horſe, and, riding full gallop down the cauſeway, he made him leap over the bars of the barriers, and came to the gate where the duke was, ſurrounded by the French nobility, who looked on this enterprize with amazement. The ſquire intended returning; but he was prevented by his horſe receiving a blow from a ſpear, which felled him and killed the ſquire. It much angered the duke that he had not been made priſoner.

Inſtantly the battalions of the earl of Buckingham advanced on foot, to the attack of the men at arms in the wooden redoubt, which had been formed of ſhutters, doors and tables, and was not, to ſay the truth, fit to hold out againſt ſuch men at arms as the Engliſh*.

When the duke of Burgundy ſaw them advance in ſuch numbers, and with ſo much ſpirit, that the lords, barons and knights in this fort were not in force to withſtand them, he directly ordered them to retreat into the town, excepting the croſs-bowmen. They retired, by little and little, to the gate; and, as they were entering it, the Genoeſe croſs-bowmen ſhot and wounded the Engliſh. There was a good and ſharp ſkirmiſh: the redoubt was ſoon conquered, but it did not long remain to the Engliſh. All ſorts of people came in great ſtrength to the gates; and, as they paſſed, they drew up on the cauſeways. The duke of Lorraine was there

* This contradicts his prior account of the redoubt.

handſomely

handſomely diſpoſed; as were the lord de Coucy, the duke of Bourbon and others. Between this gate and the bars, many valorous deeds were done, and of courſe numbers ſlain, wounded and taken.

The Engliſh, ſeeing the French retreat, retreated alſo in excellent order, and formed themſelves on the plain, in battle-array, for upwards of two hours; when, towards evening, they retired to their quarters.

The next day, the army marched to Mailleroiſle-Vicomte, near Sens in Burgundy, where they halted for two days, to refreſh themſelves and to gather proviſion from the low countries, of which they were in the greateſt want.

You have heard how the Engliſh marched through France, and thus took the road to Brittany. They publicly declared the duke and country of Brittany had ſent for them, and that they had not any pretence for waging war in the name of the king of England their lord, but that they were then in the pay of the duke of Brittany.

King Charles was at the time fully informed of all theſe matters, and, like a wiſe and prudent man as he was, examined well all the perils and incidents which might ariſe from them. He conſidered, that if Brittany joined theſe Engliſh againſt him, the fortune of war would be more doubtful; and, as he was ill with the duke, if the principal towns were to open their gates to his enemies, it would turn out very much to his prejudice. He therefore ſent, ſecretly, letters ſealed, but written in the moſt gracious manner, to the inhabitants of Nantes (which

is

is the key to all the other towns in Brittany), to request they would conſider that the Engliſh, who were marching through his kingdom, boaſted they were ſent for by them, and declared themſelves to be their ſoldiers; and that in caſe they had thus engaged them, and would perſevere in this evil act, they would incur the malediction of their holy father the pope, according to the ſentence he had paſſed, as well as the penalty of two hundred thouſand florins, which he could legally demand from them, and which they had bound themſelves to pay, according to treaties ſealed which had formerly paſſed between them, and of which he had copies, as they could not be ignorant: that he had ever been their friend, and had aſſiſted them in all their neceſſities; and that by perſiſting in this matter they would be very much to blame, for they had not any well-grounded complaint againſt him to induce them to enter ſo warmly into the war as to receive his enemies. He therefore recommended them maturely to reconſider this; and, if they had been wickedly or ill adviſed, he would frankly forgive it, provided they did not open their gates to his enemies the Engliſh, and would maintain them in all juſt rights and privileges, and even renew them, ſhould there be occaſion.

When theſe letters and offers from the king of France had been read by the men of Nantes and conſidered, the principal perſons among them ſaid, the king of France was in the right, and had cauſe for remonſtrating with them as he had done; that in truth they had ſworn and ſealed never to be

enemies

enemies themſelves to the kingdom of France, nor to give any aſſiſtance to its enemies. They began, therefore, to be on their guard, and ſent privately to the king of France not to be uneaſy on this head, as they would never aid or ſuccour the Engliſh in their attempts to injure the kingdom of France by force, nor would their town afford them any aſſiſtance; for they were determined, if there ſhould be any neceſſity, to claim the help of the king, and that to his army alone would they open their gates, and to none elſe.

The king of France, having received their meſſenger, put confidence in their declarations, for Nantes was ever attached to the French intereſt: of all this, however, the duke, who reſided at Vannes, was ignorant: he thought, nevertheleſs, that the inhabitants of Nantes would remain ſteady to him, and that they would open their gates to the Engliſh when they ſhould come thither.

We will now return to the Engliſh who were quartered near to Sens in Burgundy; in which city the duke of Bar, the lord de Coucy, the lord de Saimpi, the lord de Franſures, were in garriſon with their troops.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

THE ENGLISH OVERRUN THE COUNTRIES OF GATINOIS AND BEAUCE.—A FRENCH SQUIRE DEMANDS TO TILT WITH AN ENGLISH SQUIRE: THEY BOTH BEHAVE VERY GALLANTLY.

WHEN the earl of Buckingham and his army had repoſed themſelves at Maillerois-le-Vicomte, they determined to advance into the Gatinois: they croſſed, in conſequence, the river Yonne, and their light troops went even to the ſuburbs of Sens. The next day they quartered themſelves at St. Jean de Nemours and thereabouts, and afterwards at Beaune in Gatinois, where they remained three days, on account of its fertile and rich country. There they held a council, whether to follow the road into the plains of Beauce, or keep to the courſe of the river Loire: they reſolved on the firſt, and marched towards Toury in Beauce. In this caſtle were the lord de Saimpi, ſir Oliver de Mauny, ſir Guy le Baveux and numbers of men at arms.

There were beſides, at Geneville in Beauce, the lord de Volaines, le Barrois des Barres, with others to the amount of three hundred ſpears; and in all the caſtles and fortreſſes of Beauce were poſted men at arms to defend the country.

Thoſe of the van-guard ſkirmiſhed with the garriſon

riſon of Toury, when there were ſome ſlain on both ſides. The earl of Buckingham and his whole army were quartered at Toury in Beauce, and in the environs, where they found plenty of proviſions. During the ſkirmiſh at Toury, a ſquire from Beauce, a gentleman of tried courage, who had advanced himſelf by his own merit, without any aſſiſtance from others, came to the barriers, and cried out to the Engliſh; 'Is there among you any gentleman who for love of his lady is willing to try with me ſome feat of arms? If there ſhould be any ſuch, here I am, quite ready to ſally forth completely armed and mounted, to tilt three courſes with the lance, to give three blows with the battle-axe, and three ſtrokes with the dagger. Now look, you Engliſh, if there be none among you in love.'

This ſquire's name was Gauvain Micaille. His propoſal and requeſt was ſoon ſpread among the Engliſh, when a ſquire, an expert man at tournaments, called Joachim Cator, ſtepped forth and ſaid, 'I will deliver him from his vow: let him make haſte and come out of the caſtle.' Upon this, the lord Fitzwalter, marſhal of the army, went up to the barriers, and ſaid to ſir Guy le Baveux, 'Let your ſquire come forth: he has found one who will cheerfully deliver him; and we will afford him every ſecurity.'

Gauvain Micaille was much rejoiced on hearing theſe words. He immediately armed himſelf, in which the lords aſſiſted, in the putting on the different pieces, and mounted him on a horſe, which they gave to him. Attended by two others, he

came out of the caſtle; and his varlets carried three lances, three battle-axes and three daggers. He was much looked at by the Engliſh, for they did not think any Frenchman would have engaged body to body. There were beſides to be three ſtrokes with a ſword, and with all other ſorts of arms. Gauvain had had three brought with him for fear any ſhould break.

The earl of Buckingham, hearing of this combat, ſaid he would ſee it, and mounted his horſe, attended by the earls of Stafford and Devonſhire. On this account, the aſſault on Toury ceaſed. The Engliſhman that was to tilt was brought forward, completely armed and mounted on a good horſe. When they had taken their ſtations, they gave to each of them a ſpear, and the tilt began; but neither of them ſtruck the other, from the mettleſomeneſs of their horſes. They hit the ſecond onſet, but it was by darting their ſpears; on which the earl of Buckingham cried out, 'Hola hola! it is now late.' He then ſaid to the conſtable; 'Put an end to it, for they have done enough this day: we will make them finiſh it when we have more leiſure than we have at this moment, and take great care that as much attention is paid to the French ſquire as to our own; and order ſome one to tell thoſe of the caſtle, not to be uneaſy about him, for we ſhall carry him with us to complete his enterprize, but not as a priſoner; and that when he ſhall have been delivered, if he eſcape with his life, we will ſend him back in all ſafety.'

Theſe

Theſe orders of the earl were obeyed by the marſhal, who ſaid to the French ſquire, 'You ſhall accompany us without any danger, and when it ſhall be agreeable to my lord you will be delivered.' Gauvain replied, 'God help me!' A herald was ſent to the caſtle, to repeat to the governor the words you have heard.

The following day, they marched towards Geneville in Beauce, always in expectation of having an engagement with the enemy; for they well knew they were followed and watched by the French, in greater numbers than themſelves. True it is, that the French dukes, counts, barons, knights and ſquires eagerly wiſhed for a battle, and ſaid among themſelves, that it was very blameable and fooliſh not to permit them to engage, and ſuffer the enemy thus to ſlip through their hands. But, when it was mentioned to the king, he replied, 'Let them alone: they will deſtroy themſelves.'

The Engliſh continued their march, with the intent to enter Brittany.

You before heard, that there were three hundred ſpears in Geneville, ſo the whole army paſſed by it. There was indeed at the barriers ſome little ſkirmiſhing, which laſted not long, as it was time thrown away. Without Geneville a handſome mill was deſtroyed. The earl came to Yterville*, and diſmounted at the houſe of the Templars. The van-guard went forwards to Puiſet†, where they heard that ſixty companions had poſted themſelves

* † Probaly Interville,—Puiſé,—near Janville in Beauce.

in a large tower: they marched to the attack, for it was ſituated in the open plain without any bulwarks. The aſſault was ſharp, but did not laſt long, for the archers ſhot ſo briſkly that ſcarcely any one dared to appear on the battlements: the tower was taken, and thoſe within ſlain or made priſoners. The Engliſh then ſet fire to it, and marched on, for they were in the utmoſt diſtreſs for water.

From thence they went to Ermoyon, where they quartered themſelves, and then to the foreſt of Marchenoir. In this foreſt there is a monaſtery of monks, of the Ciſtertian order, which is called the Ciſtertian Abbey, and has ſeveral handſome and noble edifices, where formerly a moſt renowned and noble knight, the count de Blois, received great edification, and bequeathed to it large revenues; but the wars had greatly diminiſhed them. The earl of Buckingham lodged in this abbey, and heard maſs there on the feaſt of our Lady in September. It was there ordered, that Gauvain Micaille and Joachim Cator ſhould on the morrow complete their enterprize. That day the Engliſh came to Marchenoir*: the governor was a knight of that country, called ſir William de St. Martin, a prudent and valiant man at arms. The Engliſh, after having reconnoitred the caſtle, retired to their quarters. In another part, the lord Fitzwalter came before the caſtle of Verbi, not to attack

* Marchenoir,—a town in Beauce, election of Châteaudun. Near this town is a foreſt of 4230 arpents.—GAZETTEER.

tack it, but to ſpeak with the governor at the barriers, with whom he was well acquainted, having been together formerly in Pruſſia. The lord Fitzwalter made himſelf known to the lord de Verbi, and entreated him, out of courteſy, to ſend him ſome wine, and in return he would prevent his eſtate from being burnt or ſpoiled. The lord de Verbi ſent him a large quantity, and thirty great loaves with it; for which the lord Fitzwalter was very thankful, and kept his promiſe.

On the day of the feaſt of our Lady, Gauvain Micaille and Joachim Cator were armed, and mounted to finiſh their engagement. They met each other roughly with ſpears, and the French ſquire tilted much to the ſatisfaction of the earl: but the Engliſhman kept his ſpear too low, and at laſt ſtruck it into the thigh of the Frenchman. The earl of Buckingham as well as the other lords were much enraged at this, and ſaid it was tilting diſhonourably; but he excuſed himſelf, by declaring it was ſolely owing to the reſtiveneſs of his horſe. Then were given the three thruſts with the ſword; and the earl declared they had done enough, and would not have it longer continued, for he perceived the French ſquire bled exceedingly: the other lords were of the ſame opinion. Gauvain Micaille was therefore diſarmed and his wound dreſſed. The earl ſent him one hundred francs by a herald, with leave to return to his own garriſon in ſafety, adding that he had acquitted himſelf much to his ſatisfaction.

Gauvain Micaille went back to the lords of

France: and the Engliſh departed from Marchenoir, taking the road to Vendôme; but before they arrived there, they quartered themſelves in the foreſt of Coulombiers.

CHAP. XXXIX.

KING CHARLES OF FRANCE IS TAKEN ILL—HIS LAST WORDS ON HIS DEATH-BED.

YOU have heard what ſecret intrigues the king of France was carrying on with the principal towns in Brittany, to prevent them from admitting the Engliſh, menacing thoſe who ſhould do ſo that they ſhould never be forgiven. The inhabitants of Nantes ſent him word not to be alarmed; for they would never conſent to admit them, whatever treaties had been entered into with their lord: but they were deſirous, if the Engliſh ſhould approach, that ſome men at arms might be ſent, to defend the town and the inhabitants againſt their enemies.

The king of France was well inclined to this, and charged his council to ſee it executed. The main ſpring of all theſe treaties was ſir John de Bueil, on the part of the duke of Anjou, who reſided at Angers. The duke of Burgundy was quartered in the city of Mans, and in that country. Other lords, ſuch as the duke of Bourbon, the count de Bar, the lord de Coucy, the count d'Eu, the duke of Lorraine, were in the neighbouring caſtles

caſtles and forts, with a force of upwards of ſix thouſand men at arms: they ſaid among themſelves, that whether the king willed it or not, they would combat the Engliſh before they croſſed the river Sarte, which divides Maine from Anjou.

The king of France was at this moment ſeized with an illneſs, which much diſheartened all who loved him; for, as no remedy could be found for it, they foreſaw that in a very ſhort time he muſt depart this life: indeed, he himſelf knew this, as well as his ſurgeons and phyſicians. The reports were firmly believed, that the king of Navarre, during the time he reſided in Normandy, had attempted to poiſon him, and that the king was ſo much infected by the venom that the hairs of his head and the nails of his hands and feet fell off, and he became as dry as a ſtick, for which they could not diſcover any remedy. His uncle, the emperor, hearing of his illneſs, ſent to him his own phyſician, the moſt able man of that time, and of the greateſt learning then known in the world, as his works indeed ſhew: he was called a ſecond Ariſtotle, but his name was George of Prague. When this great doctor came to viſit the king, who at that time was duke of Normandy, he knew his diſorder, and declared, that having been poiſoned, he was in danger of dying: however, he performed the greateſt cure known, by ſo weakening the force of the poiſon that he cauſed him to regain his former ſtrength.

This poiſon ouzed out in ſmall quantities from an iſſue in his arm. On the departure of the doctor,

doctor, for they could not detain him, he preſcribed a medicine that was to be made uſe of conſtantly. He told the king and his attendants, that whenever this iſſue ſhould dry up, he would infallibly die: but that he would have fifteen days or more to ſettle his affairs, and attend to his ſoul.

The king of France well remembered theſe words, and had had this iſſue for twenty-two years, which at times alarmed him much. Thoſe in whom he put great confidence, in regard to his health, were able phyſicians, who comforted him, and kept up his ſpirits, by ſaying that, with the excellent medicines they had, they would make him live long in joy and happineſs, ſo that he had great faith in them. The king had, beſides other diſorders that afflicted him much, the tooth-ache: from this he ſuffered the greateſt torment; and his majeſty knew, from all theſe ſymptoms, he could not live very long: but the greateſt comfort, towards the end of his days, was in God for having given him three fine children, two ſons and a daughter, Charles, Louis and Catherine.

When this iſſue began to ceaſe running, the fears of death came upon him: he therefore, like a wiſe and prudent man, began to look to his affairs. He ſent for his three brothers, the duke of Berry, the duke of Burgundy and the duke of Bourbon*, without noticing his next brother, the duke of Anjou, whom he did not ſend for, becauſe he knew him to be very avaricious. When they

* Duke of Bourbon—was brother to the late queen.

were

were arrived, he ſaid to them; 'My dear brothers, I feel I have not long to live: I therefore recommend to your charge my ſon Charles, to take that care of him that good uncles ought to do of their nephew, by which you will loyally acquit yourſelves. Have him crowned king as ſoon as you poſſibly can after my deceaſe, and adviſe him juſtly in all his affairs. My whole confidence reſts in you: the child is young, and, being of an unſteady temper, will want to be well managed and properly inſtructed in ſound learning. Teach him, or have him taught, every point relative to royalty, and the manner in which he ſhould, according to the ſituation he may be in, conduct himſelf. Marry him to ſuch a princeſs of high birth that the kingdom may gain by it. I have had with me for a conſiderable time a learned aſtronomer*, who has predicted that in his youth he will have much to do, and eſcape from great perils and dangers. Having thought much on theſe expreſſions, I have conſidered that the events alluded to muſt have their origin in Flanders; for, thanks to God, the affairs of my kingdom are in a very good condition. The duke of Brittany is very deceitful and froward, and has always had more of Engliſh than French courage; for which reaſon, you muſt keep the nobles and principal towns of that country in good af-

* Thomas de Piſan. For particulars of him and of his daughter, ſee Moreri's dictionary, and vol. xvii. of the Mémoires de l'Academie.

fection

fection to you, in order to traverſe his deſigns. I have every cauſe to praiſe the Bretons, for they have ſerved me faithfully in the defence of my kingdom againſt its enemies. You will make the lord de Cliſſon conſtable: every thing conſidered, I know no one ſo proper for that office. Seek out, in Germany, an alliance for my ſon, that our connexions there may be ſtrengthened. You have heard our adverſary is about to marry from thence, to increaſe his allies. The poor people of my realm are much haraſſed and tormented by taxes and ſubſidies: take them off as ſpeedily as you can, for they are things which, notwithſtanding I propoſed them, weigh very heavy on my mind: but the great undertakings we have had to maintain in every part of the kingdom forced me to ſubmit to them.' Many more kind words did king Charles utter, but I have not thought it requiſite to cite them all.' The king explained why the duke of Anjou was abſent; for he ſuſpected him much, knowing him to be of an ambitious temper. Notwithſtanding the king of France did not permit him to attend his death-bed, nor to have any part in the government of France, this duke did not keep at a very great diſtance: he had beſides meſſengers continually going between Paris and Angers, who brought him exact accounts of the ſtate of his brother's health. He had alſo ſome about the king's perſon, who informed him ſecretly what daily paſſed; and the laſt day, when the king of France departed this life, he was at Paris, and ſo near to the king's chamber

chamber that he heard all the diſcourſe I have juſt related. But we will now follow the Engliſh in their march to Brittany.

CHAP. XL.

THE LORD DE HANGEST IS NEAR TAKEN BY THE ENGLISH.—THE LORD DE MAUVOISIN REMAINS THEIR PRISONER.—THE ENGLISH CROSS THE RIVER SARTE IN DISORDER.

WHEN the earl of Buckingham quitted the foreſt of Marchenoir with his army, he took the road towards Vendôme and the foreſt of Coulombiers. Sir Thomas Trivet and ſir William Clinton were ſomewhat advanced, with forty ſpears, and by accident met the lord de Hangeſt, who was returning from Vendôme, accompanied by thirty lances. The Engliſh ſoon ſaw they were French, and eagerly galloped towards them. The French, who found they were not in equal numbers, had no wiſh to wait for them, nor to fight, for they were near to Vendôme: they made, therefore, for that place, the Engliſh purſuing them. Sir Robert de Hangeſt, couſin to the lord of that name, was ſlain, and John de Mondecris with five or ſix others were made priſoners. The lord de Hangeſt came ſo opportunely to the barrier that he found it open. Having fixed his lance, he put himſelf in a gallant poſture of defence: the reſt of his companions did

ſo

ſo as they came up: however, twelve remained priſoners.

Sir Robert Knolles had alſo this day made an excurſion from the army: he met the lord de Mauvoiſin, who defended himſelf valiantly, but was in the end was made priſoner by ſir Robert himſelf. This day the army marched by Vendôme to Auſſie, and on the morrow to St. Calais*, where they halted for two days, and then came to Pontvalin†.

The Engliſh thus advanced, without meeting any to oppoſe them: but the whole country was full of men at arms, and numbers were in the city of Mans. At this period, the duke of Anjou paſſed through Tours, Blois and Orleans, in his way to Paris; for he had heard his brother was in ſo dangerous a ſtate there were not any hopes of his recovery, and he was anxious to be with him at his deceaſe. Notwithſtanding this illneſs of the king, from which he was never expected to recover, the men at arms did not deſiſt from purſuing and watching the Engliſh on their march: the commanders ordered their men to haraſs them as much as they could, and to attempt if poſſible to ſurround them, which would prevent them from having any proviſion; and then they would engage with them at their will, whether the king of France gave permiſſion or not.

In conſequence, the lords of France had brought

* St. Calais,—a town in Maine, ſix leagues from Vendôme.
† Pontvalin,—a town in Anjou.

to

to that part of the Sarte which the Engliſh were to paſs, large beams which they had fixed acroſs the river with ſharp ſtakes, ſo that they would not be able to croſs it. On the banks, they dug very wide and deep ditches, to prevent their deſcending to the river, or aſcending from it.

The earl of Buckingham marched from Pont-valin with his army to the Sarte, where he halted; for they could not find a ford, as the river was ſwelled and deep, and difficult to croſs except in certain places. The van-guard marched up and down, but could not diſcover any other ford but where the beams of timber and ſtakes had been fixed.

The lords diſmounted, and, obſerving the ford, ſaid, 'It is here we muſt paſs, if we mean to march further: come let us be active, and drag theſe beams out of our way.' You would have ſeen, after this ſpeech, knights, barons and ſquires enter the river, and labour moſt heartily before they could ſucceed: at laſt, they gained their point, but with much difficulty, and, having cleared away all obſtacles, opened a paſſage. Had the French been watchful enough, they might have done them much harm; for thoſe who croſſed firſt could not aſſiſt thoſe that followed, on account of the deep mud they had to go through. The Engliſh took ſuch pains, that they did paſs them, and arrived at Noyon ſur Sarre.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLI.

THE DEATH OF CHARLES THE FIFTH, KING OF FRANCE.

THAT ſame day on which the Engliſh croſſed the Sarte with ſo much difficulty, Charles, king of France, departed this life, in his hôtel at Paris called the hôtel de St. Pol*. No ſooner did his brother, the duke of Anjou, know that the king's eyes were cloſed than he ſeized all the jewels of the king, which were very valuable, and had them ſecured in a ſafe place, flattering himſelf they would be of the utmoſt uſe to him in the intended war and journey he was about to make; for he already ſigned himſelf king of Sicily, la Puglia, Calabria and Jeruſalem.

The king of France was carried through the city of Paris to the abbey of St. Denis, with his face uncovered, followed by his brothers and his two ſons, where he was moſt honourably interred. He had given orders reſpecting his burial during his

* King Charles died Sunday the 16th September 1 80, at his château of Beauté ſur Marne. On the Monday, his body was carried early to St. Anthony, hard by Paris, to wait the arrival of his brothers. It remained there until Monday 14th October, when it was borne to the church of nôtre Dame in Paris, and on the following day to St. Denis.—*Grands Chroniques de France.*

life-time;

life-time; and his conſtable, ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, lies at his feet.

Notwithſtanding the orders king Charles had given, before his death, reſpecting the government of the kingdom, they were totally diſregarded; for the duke of Anjou immediately took poſſeſſion, and over-ruled all the others. He was willing his nephew ſhould be crowned king, but reſolved to have the management of affairs as much, if not more, than any other, on account of his being the eldeſt uncle; and there were none in the kingdom who dared to diſpute it with him.

The king of France died on the eve of Michaelmas: ſoon after his deceaſe, the peers and barons of France recommended that the king ſhould be crowned immediately after All-ſaints, at Rheims. The three uncles, Anjou, Berry and Burgundy, agreed to this propoſal; but they inſiſted on governing the realm until the child ſhould be of age, that is to ſay, twenty-one years*, which they made the great barons and prelates of France ſwear to obſerve. After this, the coronation of the young king was notified in foreign countries, to the duke of Brabant, duke Albert of Bavaria, the count de Savoye, the count de Blois, the duke de Gueldres,

* It muſt be miſtake; for Charles V. enacted, the 21ſt May 1375, a law, that the heirs apparent ſhould henceforward be of age to govern when fourteen years old. He, at the ſame time, ordered the duke of Anjou to have the government during the minority, and the dukes of Burgundy and Bourbon to have the management of his ſon until he was 14 years of age.—*Grandes Chroniques.*

the duke de Juliers, the count d'Armagnac, and to the count de Foix. The duke of Bar, the duke of Lorraine, the lord de Coucy, the count dauphin of Auvergne, were purſuing the Engliſh: they were not, therefore, ſo ſoon ſent to; but the count of Flanders was invited; and the day fixed was All-ſaints, which fell on a Sunday.

The men of Ghent were much grieved at the death of the king of France; for he had been very friendly to them during their war, loving but little the earl of Flanders.

We will now ſpeak of the Engliſh, and then return to the coronation of the king of France.

CHAP. XLII.

THE ENGLISH ARRIVE IN BRITTANY.—THE DUKE EXCUSES HIMSELF FOR HAVING SO LONG DELAYED COMING TO MEET THEM.—THEY UNDERTAKE TOGETHER THE SIEGE OF NANTES.

THE Engliſh, having croſſed the Sarte in great danger, were not ignorant of the death of the king of France. The were quartered at Noyon ſur Sarte: from thence they marched to Poilli, two leagues from Sablé*. The whole ſtrength of France was at that time in the city of Mans, and

* Sablé,—an ancient town in Maine on the Sarte, 29 leagues from Rennes.

in

in that part of the country, but they contented themſelves with following the march of the Engliſh: ſome, however, ſaid, they would combat them.

When intelligence of the king's death became public, the intentions of the French were fruſtrated; for many of the barons decamped, and returned to Paris, to learn what was going forward. The Engliſh continued for three days in their quarters: on the fourth day they departed, and came to St. Pierre d'Arne, and from thence to Argentie. The next day the army croſſed the river Mayenne, and paſſed a marſh with much difficulty, for only two or three could march in front the whole of this road, which laſted upwards of two leagues. Now, conſider what danger they were in; for if the French had known this, and attacked the van, the rear could not have aſſiſted them: of this the Engliſh were greatly afraid: however, they paſſed in ſafety, and arrived at Coſſé*, where they halted four days in conſtant expectation of having ſome intelligence from Brittany.

The duke of Brittany reſided at Hennebon, in the diſtrict of Vannes: he had heard frequently of the Engliſh, and that they were near the frontiers of Brittany, but he did not know how to act. When he learnt the king of France's death, he took little notice of it, for he did not love him, but ſaid to thoſe near him; 'The rancour and hatred which I bore the kingdom of France, on account

* Coſſé,—a town of Maine, election of Laval.

of this king Charles, is now one-half diminiſhed; for thoſe who hated the father may love the ſon, and thoſe who have made war on the father may aſſiſt the ſon. It is neceſſary, however, for me to acquit myſelf to the Engliſh; for, in truth, it has been at my requeſt and ſolicitation they have marched through the kingdom of France, and I muſt keep the promiſes I have made them: but in this there is much difficulty, both in regard to them and me, as I wiſh our principal towns to ſhut their gates, and not allow them to enter within them.'

The duke then ſummoned ſome of his council, ſuch as the lord de Montbourſier, ſir Stephen Guyon, ſir William Tanneguy, ſir Euſtace de la Houſſaye, ſir Geoffry de Kerimel and the judge-aſſeſſor of Léon, and ſaid to them; 'You will ride to my lord of Buckingham, who is approaching Brittany, and whom I believe you will find not far off: recommend me to him, and ſalute on my part all his barons. You will tell them, that I ſhall ſhortly be at Rennes to meet them; to which place I wiſh they would direct their march; when we will conſider together on the beſt plans for our further proceedings. Tell them alſo, that I do not find my country in the ſame diſpoſitions as when I ſent to England, which vexes me much: that, in particular, I am hurt with the men of Nantes, who are more rebellious than any of the others.'

The knights replied, they would cheerfully carry

carry this meſſage. They took leave of the duke, and rode to Nantes: in the whole, they were about ſixty ſpears.

The Engliſh having marched from Coſſé, and entered the foreſt of la Gravelle, which they traverſed, arrived at Vitré* in Brittany, where they felt themſelves more ſecure than they had hitherto been, for they knew they ſhould no longer be purſued by the French. From thence they went to Châteaubriant†, where they remained with the knights from the duke of Brittany, who met them at that place.

The earl of Buckingham and the barons of England received the knights from the duke of Brittany moſt honourably, and there were many councils and debates. The Engliſh ſaid in plain terms, they were much aſtoniſhed that neither the duke nor the country were better prepared, and ſhewed not any inclinations to receive them; for it was at their requeſt they were come, and had ſuffered ſo many difficulties in their march through France.

The lord de Montbourſier then ſaid, in excuſe of the duke; 'My lords, you have very good cauſe for having thus ſpoken, and the duke has a thorough good will to fulfil every article of the engagements which have been entered into between you both, to the utmoſt of his power; but

* Vitre,—a city of Brittany, on the Vilaine, dioceſe of Rennes.

† Châteaubriant,—a town of Brittany, on the confines of Anjou, dioceſe of Nantes.

he cannot act as he wiſhes: in particular, the inhabitants of Nantes, which is the key to Brittany, are in complete rebellion, and are ready to receive men at arms from France. This conduct has very much aſtoniſhed my lord; for it was that town which firſt entered into the alliance with the other chief towns in Brittany, and my lord believes that the men of Nantes have entered into a new treaty with the young king of France, who is to be crowned on All-ſaints day enſuing. My lord, therefore, begs and entreats you will hold him excuſed: he alſo deſires that you will take the road to Rennes, whither he will come to meet you; for he has a great deſire to ſee you, and will not fail being there.'

Theſe words much pleaſed the earl of Buckingham and the Engliſh: they declared, he could not ſay more. The meſſengers, returning to the duke towards Hennebon, met him at Vannes. The Engliſh continued four days at Châteaubriant, when they marched away to the ſuburbs of Rennes: the gates of the city were ſhut, and no man at arms was ſuffered to enter: the earl of Buckingham, however, was lodged in the town, as were the lord Latimer, ſir Robert Knolles, and five or ſix other barons of the council to the earl. They remained there upwards of fifteen days, waiting in vain for the duke, who never came, which aſtoniſhed them greatly.

The lord de Monteraulieu, the lord Montfort of Brittany, ſir Geoffry de Kerimel, and ſir Alain de la Houſſaye, the governor of Rennes, were in the city,

city, as alſo ſir Euſtace, the governor's brother, who made daily excuſes for the duke. I know not if they had a good cauſe to plead or not, but the Engliſh began to be very diſcontented with the duke for not coming.

Thoſe of Nantes kept their gates well guarded; for they did not think themſelves ſecure from the Engliſh, whom they knew to be at Rennes: they ſent, therefore, to the duke of Anjou, who had been the origin of the late treaties, and by whom the greater part of the kingdom was governed, to remonſtrate with him on their incapacity to defend themſelves, if they ſhould be beſieged, without having a ſtronger body of men at arms: they therefore entreated him to provide them with a reinforcement. The four dukes who governed France, Anjou, Berry, Burgundy and Bourbon, complied with their requeſt, and ſent upwards of ſix hundred good and valorous men at arms. Thus was Nantes reinforced. Thoſe men at arms immediately repaired every part of the walls, and put the town in a proper condition to reſiſt a ſiege or an attack, if ſuch ſhould happen.

The Engliſh, quartered at Rennes and thereabouts, began to deſpond on account of the duke's not coming to them: they reſolved, in a council, to ſend to know his reaſons of delay. Lord Thomas Percy and ſir Thomas Trivet were ordered to wait on him, eſcorted by five hundred lances, to prevent or oppoſe any ambuſcades which might be laid for them. Theſe two barons departed from Rennes, attended by this body of

lances, with as many archers, and took the road to Hennebon. They ſet out on a Thurſday: the following Saturday, the earl marched the army to St. Sulpice in Brittany, where he halted three days: on the fourth, he marched to Combront, where he remained four days.

The duke of Brittany had left Hennebon, and was at Vannes: he had regular information of all the Engliſh were doing, and, after having well conſidered every thing, reſolved to go to them: for his own honour, and the alliances he had formed with them, would not ſuffer him longer to delay it. Having learnt that ſir Robert Knolles, lord Thomas Percy and ſir Thomas Trivet were coming to him, he began his journey to Rennes; and, the day that he ſet out from Vannes, he met the Engliſh knights. This meeting cauſed great joy: the duke of Brittany made inquiries after the earl of Buckingham, and the knights told him they had left him very melancholy at Rennes, becauſe he had not any tidings of him. The duke excuſed himſelf by ſaying, that by his faith he could not help it. They then rode all together to Vannes, where they were well received; but they knew that the Engliſh army had marched from Combront to la Hedé and la Maiſiere, for they had followed that road.

The earl of Buckingham arrived at Vannes the next day, when great affection was ſhewn on both ſides. The duke handſomely excuſed himſelf to the earl and the Engliſh for his delay in coming to them: the reaſon of it was, that he did not find his

his country determined to perform what they had promiſed him at the beginning of the ſummer.

The earl replied; 'Fair brother of Brittany, it ſhall not be long, if you follow my advice, before you puniſh theſe rebels; for, with the forces which you have yourſelf, and thoſe we have brought, with the additional reinforcements that may arrive from England every day, we ſhall bring your ſubjects into ſuch a ſtate of ſubmiſſion that they will gadly throw themſelves on your mercy.' With theſe and ſuchlike ſpeeches they converſed for a long time, when each retired to his hôtel. On the morrow, they rode out together: it was then ſettled that the council of the earl ſhould attend the duke to Rennes, and finally make arrangements for their future proceedings. That evening the duke, with the earl's council, remained at la Maiſiere, and the earl returned to la Hedé, for they were all quartered in the environs of la Maiſiere. The next day, the duke went to Rennes, accompanied by the lord Latimer, ſir Robert Knolles, lord Thomas Percy, ſir Thomas Trivet, and others of the council of the earl.

They remained three days in conſultation at Rennes: at laſt, it was determined, and ſworn to, on the part of the duke of Brittany, on the holy Evangeliſts, that he would lay ſiege to Nantes, in company with the earl of Buckingham, and be there in perſon fifteen days after the Engliſh were arrived. The duke alſo engaged to ſend down the river Loire plenty of barges, the more to conſtrain thoſe of Nantes, and would not himſelf quit

the

the place, nor ſuffer his army to do ſo, before it ſhould be conquered.

The earl of Buckingham was ſent for to la Hedé, that all this buſineſs might be completely ſettled, and that he might be preſent at theſe councils. The army therefore diſlodged, and took up their former quarters in the ſuburbs of Rennes. The earls and barons entered Rennes, when the earl gave them a moſt magnificent dinner. The duke of Brittany engaged, and ſwore by his faith ſolemnly on the holy Evangeliſts to come to Nantes with all his forces. After this, he returned to Hennebon. The Engliſh remained for upwards of fifteen days at Rennes, in making the neceſſary preparations.

The inhabitants of Nantes, being informed that the ſiege of their town was intended, took every precaution to defend themſelves. One of the principal captains in Nantes was ſir John le Barrois des Barres, a valiant and expert knight: there were with him the following captains; John de Cliſſon, John de Châtelmorant, Morſonace, ſir John de Malatrait, the lord de Tournemine and ſeveral more, all the flower of the army. Theſe leaders made very prudent and able defences, as well towards the river as at the gates, walls and towers which were oppoſite to the plain, and at thoſe parts where they thought it probable an attack might be made.

We will now give theſe affairs a reſpite, and ſpeak of the ceremonies of the coronation of the young king Charles, who at this period was crowned at Rheims.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

THE CORONATION OF KING CHARLES VI. OF FRANCE.

AS you may well imagine, nothing was ſpared by the nobility and great lords to add to the magnificence of the coronation of the young king Charles of France, who was crowned at Rheims on a Sunday*, in the twelfth year of his age, in the year 1380. At this ſolemnity there were many high and mighty lords: his uncles of Anjou, Berry, Burgundy and Bourbon, were preſent; as were alſo his great uncles, Winceſlaus† duke of Brabant, the duke of Bar, the duke of Lorraine, the count de Savoye, the count de la Marche, the count d'Eu and ſir William de Namur: but the earl of Flanders and the count de Blois ſent excuſes. There were ſeveral other lords whom I cannot name.

The young king made his entry into the city of Rheims on the Saturday, handſomely attended by the great lords, nobility and minſtrels, at veſpers. In particular, there were upwards of thirty trumpets, which preceded him, and ſounded ſo clear it

* The 4th November 1380. He returned to Paris the 11th.—*Grands Chroniques.*

† Winceſlaus, &c.—See annotation 9th by D. Sauvage.

was

was quite marvellous to hear them. The young king of France diſmounted before the church of our Lady at Rheims, in company with his uncles and brother. There were alſo his couſins of Navarre, d'Albreth, of Bar and of Harcourt*, and a great many other young ſquires, children of the great barons of France, whom the king on the morrow, being the day of his coronation, created knights. This Saturday, the king heard veſpers in the church of our Lady, and performed his vigils in that church, according to the cuſtom of thoſe times, the greater part of the night. All the youths deſirous of knighthood attended him, and did the ſame.

On the Sunday, which was All-ſaints day, the church of our Lady was very richly decorated for the coronation; ſo much ſo that it could not poſſibly have been better ordered. The archbiſhop of Rheims, after having ſaid maſs with great ſolemnity, conſecrated the king with the holy ampulla with which St. Remy had anointed Clovis, the firſt Chriſtian king of the French. This ſacred oil was ſent from God by a holy angel, with which the kings of France have ever ſince been anointed, and it never diminiſhes. Now this muſt be conſidered as wonderfully miraculous.

Before the conſecration, the king created, in front of the altar, all thoſe young ſquires, knights: the office of maſs was afterwards chaunted by the

* D. Sauvage ſays, the three firſt were his couſins by his mother's ſide; but he knows nothing of the fourth.

archbiſhop,

archbiſhop, the king being clothed in his royal robes, and ſeated on an elevated throne, adorned with cloth of gold; and all the young knights were placed on low benches, covered alſo with the ſame, at his feet. In this ſtate did they remain the whole day. The new conſtable, ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, was preſent: he had been named conſtable a few days prior to this ceremony, and performed well his charge and every thing belonging to it. The principal barons of France were alſo there ſo richly dreſſed it would be tedious to relate: the king was ſeated in royal majeſty, with a crown on his head rich and precious beyond meaſure.

The church of our Lady at Rheims was ſo much crowded during this ceremony that one could not turn one's foot. I have heard alſo, that at this acceſſion of the young king to the throne, in order to pleaſe the people of France, all impoſitions, aids, taxes, ſubſidies and other levies, which had diſpleaſed and had much oppreſſed them, were aboliſhed, greatly to the joy of the ſubject.

After maſs, they went to the palace; but, as the hall was too ſmall for ſuch numbers, they erected in the court of the palace a large covered ſtage, on which the dinner was ſerved. The king was ſeated with his five uncles of Brabant, Anjou, Berry, Burgundy and Bourbon; but, though they were at his table, they were at a diſtance from him. The archbiſhop of Rheims and other prelates were on his right hand. He was ſerved by the great barons, the lord de Coucy, the lord de Cliſſon, ſir Guy de la Tremouille, the lord high admiral and ſeveral others, on handſome horſes, covered and decorated

with

with gold brocade. The whole day paſſed in ceremonies. On the morrow, many of the great barons took leave of the king and his uncles, and returned to their own country.

The king went that day to dinner at the abbey of St. Thierry, two leagues from Rheims; for thoſe monks are bound to give him this entertainment, and the city of Rennes to provide for the coronation of the king. Thus ended this noble feaſt. He returned to Paris, where he was grandly feaſted by the Pariſians at his entrance.

After all theſe ceremonies, entertainments and honours, there were great councils holden on the preſent and future adminiſtration of the kingdom. It was ſettled that the duke of Berry ſhould have the government of Languedoc; the duke of Burgundy, Picardy and Normandy; and that the duke of Anjou ſhould remain near the king's perſon, and have, in fact, the whole government of the realm. The count de St. Pol was recalled, who had been baniſhed from the favour of the late king Charles. He was indebted for this grace to Winceſlaus duke of Brabant, and to the duke of Anjou, in whoſe affection the count de St. Pol was. He immediately left Han ſur Heure, ſituated in the biſhoprick of Liege, where he had remained a long time, and returned to France, leaving his lady in the caſtle of Bouhaing. All the confiſcations were taken off his eſtates, which reverted to his profit.

We will ſay no more on theſe ſubjects, but return to the affairs of Brittany and the earl of Buckingham.

TWO

TWO ADDITIONAL CHAPTERS,

WHICH ARE ONLY IN ONE OF MY MSS. AND NOT IN ANY PRINTED COPY.

YOU have heard how ſir Simon Burley, that gallant knight attached to the houſehold of king Richard of England, had been ſent with propaſals to the emperor in Germany reſpecting the marriage of the lady Anne, his ſiſter, with the king of England. He had tranſacted the buſineſs with ability, ſo that the emperor and his council conſented; but he had brought with him, on his return, the duke of Saxony, one of the council of the emperor, for him to obſerve the ſtate of England, and to make inquiries concerning the dower, and how it was to be ſettled on the queen. It is the cuſtom in England for the queens to have a large eſtate, independant of the crown, which is always managed by her directions; and it is called the inheritance or dowry lands of the queen. This eſtate is worth twenty-five thouſand nobles a year; for I, John Froiſſart, author of this hiſtory, during my youth, ſerved that queen of good memory, the lady Philippa of Hainault, to whom I was ſecretary; and I then heard from many lords, ladies and knights who had received the rents of theſe eſtates, their amount.

The

The duke of Saxony was much pleaſed with all he ſaw and heard, particularly reſpecting the dower: he was well ſatisfied with the king, and his two uncles of Lancaſter and Cambridge; for the other was in France; and alſo with the earl of Saliſbury, the earl of Warwick, the earl of Northumberland, and the other lords about the perſon of the king.

When the duke had remained ſome time in England, and finiſhed the buſineſs he had come upon, he took leave of the king, promiſing to perſevere in the marriage to the concluſion. At his departure, he received handſome preſents of jewels for himſelf, for thoſe attendant on the perſon of the emperor, and alſo for the ladies who had the management of the young lady, Anne of Bohemia, the intended future queen of England. The duke returned, well pleaſed, to his own country; but this buſineſs was not immediately concluded, for the damſel was young, and the councils of each party had many things to arrange: add to this, there ſhortly afterward happened in England great miſery and tribulation, as you will hear recounted in this hiſtory.

[The remaining part of this chapter mentions the death of ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, earl of Huntingdon, nearly as it has been before related.]

THERE fell out about this time, in England, an even that gave great diſpleaſure to the earl of Buckingham

Buckingham when he heard of it. I will explain to you what it was. Humphry earl of Hereford and Northampton, and conſtable of England, was one of the greateſt lords and landholders in that country; for it was ſaid, and I, the author of this book, heard it when I reſided in England, that his revenue was valued at fifty thouſand nobles a-year. From this earl of Hereford there remained only two daughters as his heireſſes; Blanche the eldeſt, and Iſabella* her ſiſter. The eldeſt was married to Thomas of Woodſtock, earl of Buckingham. The youngeſt was unmarried, and the earl of Buckingham would willingly have had her remain ſo, for then he would have enjoyed the whole of the earl of Hereford's fortune. Upon his marriage with Eleanor, he went to reſide at his handſome caſtle of Pleſhy, in the county of Eſſex, thirty miles from London, which he poſſeſſed in right of his wife. He took on himſelf the tutelage of his ſiſter-in-law, and had her inſtructed in doctrine; for it was his intention ſhe ſhould be profeſſed a nun of the order of St. Clare, which had a very rich and large convent in England. In this manner was ſhe educated during the time the earl remained in England, before his expedition into France. She was alſo conſtantly attended by nuns from this convent, who inſtructed her in matters of religion, continually blaming the married ſtate. The young lady ſeemed to incline to their doctrine, and thought not of marriage.

* Froiſſart miſtakes: their names were Eleanor and Mary.

Duke John of Lancaſter, being a prudent and wiſe man, foreſaw the advantage of marrying his only ſon Henry, by his firſt wife Blanche, to the lady Mary: he was heir to all the poſſeſſions of the houſe of Lancaſter in England, which were very conſiderable. The duke had for ſome time conſidered he could not chooſe a more deſirable wife for his ſon than the lady who was intended for a nun, as her eſtates were very large, and her birth ſuitable to any rank; but he did not take any ſteps in the matter until his brother of Buckingham had ſet out on his expedition to France. When he had croſſed the ſea, the duke of Lancaſter had the young lady conducted to Arundel caſtle; for the aunt of the two ladies was the ſiſter of Richard earl of Arundel, one of the moſt powerful barons of England.

This lady Arundel, out of complaiſance to the duke of Lancaſter, and for the advancement of the young lady, went to Pleſhy, where ſhe remained with the counteſs of Buckingham and her ſiſter for fifteen days. On her departure from Pleſhy, ſhe managed ſo well that ſhe carried with her the lady Mary to Arundel, when the marriage was inſtantly conſummated between her and Henry of Lancaſter. During their union of twelve years, he had by her four handſome ſons, Henry, Thomas, John and Humphrey, and two daughters, Blanche and Philippa.

The earl of Buckingham, as I ſaid, had not any inclination to laugh when he heard theſe tidings; for it would now be neceſſary to divide an inheritance which he conſidered wholly as his own, excepting

cepting the conſtableſhip which was continued to him.

When he learnt that his brothers had all been concerned in this matter, he became melancholy, and never after loved the duke of Lancaſter as he had hitherto done.

We will now return to the affairs of Brittany.

CHAP. XLIV.

THE EARL OF BUCKINGHAM BESIEGES NANTES.—SALLIES ARE MADE BY THE GARRISON.

YOU have heard of the agreement which had been ſworn to, between the duke of Brittany and earl of Buckingham, to beſiege Nantes. When the duke had left Rennes, the lord de Montbourſier, ſir Stephen Guyon, the lord de la Houſſaye and their company retired to Vannes and Hennebon; and the earl of Buckingham and his army prepared to march to Nantes: they ſet out, therefore, from the ſuburbs of Rennes, and the adjacent villages where they had been quartered, and lodged that day at Chaſtillon, on the next day at Bain, and the third at Nozay; and on the fourth they quartered themſelves in the ſuburbs of Nantes.

The earl was lodged at the gate of Sauvetout:

the lord Latimer conſtable of the army*, lord Fitzwalter and lord Baſſet were quartered at the gate of St. Nicholas, cloſe to the river ſide. Sir William Windſor and ſir Hugh Calverley were lodged right honourably among their own men, as was proper for them.

In the town were numbers of knights and ſquires from Brittany, Beauce, Anjou and Maine, who well underſtood how to defend the place: they had the whole load and charge, for the inhabitants gave themſelves no trouble about it. It happened, that on Martinmas eve, ſir John le Barrois des Barres collected ſome of his companions in the town and ſaid to them; 'My good gentlemen, we know that our enemies are cloſe to us, and we have not yet given them an alert: I am of opinion, that this fine night we ſhould look at them, and give them a ſkirmiſh.' 'By my faith,' they replied, 'you ſpeak loyally: tell us what you wiſh, and we will do it.'

They collected a body of about one hundred and twenty, well armed and determined men, and having ordered the gate to be opened where the conſtable, the lord Baſſet and the lord Fitzwalter were quartered, placed good guards at it to ſecure their retreat. The leaders of this troop were le Barrois des Barres, John Châtelmorant and the captain de Cliſſon. They came ſo unexpectedly as to find

* Lord D'Spencer was conſtable in the preceding chapter. D. Sauvage ſuppoſes Froiſſart had forgotten it. But Dugdale ſays, in his Baronage, 'he was conſtable of the hoſt at the ſiege of Nantes.'

the

the Engliſh at ſupper: having ſhouted their war-cry, 'Des Barres!' the French began to lay about them, ſlaying and wounding many. The Engliſh were ſoon prepared and drawn up before their quarters, which when the French ſaw they very prudently retreated in a compact body towards the town. The Engliſh came from all parts to the ſkirmiſh: ſome of each ſide were ſtruck to the ground, and the French driven within their barriers.

There were ſome ſlain and wounded on both ſides; but le Barrois des Barres entered the town with ſo little loſs that this ſkirmiſh was held, both at home and abroad, as a gallant action.

On the evening of St. Martin's day, le Barrois des Barres ſpoke to his companions, ſaying; 'It would be a good thing if, at day-break to-morrow, we could get ſix or ſeven large barges, with two hundred men and the ſame number of croſs-bows, to viſit our enemies by water; for they have not the leaſt ſuſpicions of our coming to them down the river.' They all aſſented to this propoſal, and aſſembled that ſame night the number of men des Barres had fixed on: before day-light, they embarked in ſix large boats, and, floating down the ſtream, landed below the enemy's quarters. Sir John Harleſtone with his men were lodged in a large hôtel, not far from where they had landed, and which at day-break they ſurrounded and attacked. Sir John was ſoon dreſſed and armed, as were his men: they defended themſelves courageouſly, the archers ſhooting at the croſs-bows. This ſkirmiſh was long and ſevere; many were

killed and wounded, and ſir John would have been conquered, if ſir Robert Knolles, who was quartered not far diſtant, had not armed himſelf and his men, and, with diſplayed banner, advanced haſtily to his aſſiſtance. Sir William Windſor did the ſame, who, having had information of what was going on, hurried thither: beſides, the Engliſh were now coming from all parts.

The French retreated to their boats, as they ſaw the neceſſity of it, or elſe of riſking the event of a battle. There was much ſkirmiſhing on the ſhore, as they reimbarked, but they departed very gallantly.

The captains performed many valorous deeds; but, on their return to Nantes, ſeveral of the French were taken, ſlain or drowned. All who heard of this enterprize conſidered it as one of great courage and ability.

The Engliſh, finding themſelves thus conſtantly attacked by the garriſon of Nantes, reſolved to be more on their guard, and to keep a ſtricter watch. The ſeventh night, however, after the attack which le Barrois had led down the river, he made another ſally from the gate where the earl of Buckingham was quartered: le Barrois had with him about two hundred men at arms and one hundred croſs-bows. The Germans were on guard this night, under the command of ſir Algars and ſir Thomas de Roddes. Le Barrois, John de Châtelmorant and de Cliſſon, with their men, immediately attacked this guard of Germans, when a ſharp conteſt began, and many were ſtruck to the earth. Thoſe quartered near to

the

ths earl aroſe, armed themſelves, and haſtened to this ſkirmiſh; but, when le Barrois ſaw the numbers increaſing, he retreated to the gate, fighting all his way. Several were killed by the arrows, and many wounded on both ſides. Sir Thomas de Roddes, a knight from Germany, was ſtruck by an arrow, which pierced quite through his helmet to his head; of which wound he died three days after: it was a pity, for he was a very able knight. The French and Bretons re-entered Nantes with ſcarcely any loſs, carrying with them ſix priſoners.

Things remained in this ſtate, and the Engliſh much on their guard, for they expected an alert every night.

CHAP. XLV.

THE DUKE OF BRITTANY EXPLAINS HIS REASONS FOR NOT COMING TO THE SIEGE OF NANTES.—THE GARRISON CONTINUE MOST VALIANTLY TO MAKE SALLIES.

THE earl of Buckingham remained in this ſituation before Nantes, daily expecting the arrival of the duke of Brittany, who never came, nor kept any of the promiſes he had engaged to perform, which quite diſcouraged the Engliſh, who knew not what to think of it. They ſent repeatedly

meſſengers with letters, to remonſtrate with him how ill he was conducting himſelf by not keeping thoſe promiſes and argreements he had ſworn to ſo ſolemnly when in the city of Rennes. To all theſe letters the earl did not receive one anſwer: the Engliſh ſuppoſed the meſſengers to have been ſlain, for none returned; and in truth there was great danger to all who travelled between Nantes and Hennebon, unleſs they were ſtrongly eſcorted. The roads were ſo ſtrictly guarded by men at arms, no one could paſs without being taken, or his buſineſs known; and, if there were found upon him letters from the Engliſh to the duke, or from the duke to them, the bearer was ſure to be put to death. In addition to this, the foragers of the army dared not venture abroad but in large companies; for the knights and ſquires of the country had aſſembled, and would not ſuffer their lands to be overrun and pillaged, ſo that, whenever they fell in with bodies of twenty or thirty, they took all they had and their horſes from them, beſides wounding or killing them. This much enraged the army, but they knew not on whom to revenge themſelves.

To ſay the truth, the duke of Brittany did every thing he could to make his people conſent to follow him to the ſiege of Nantes, according to the agreement he had entered into with the earl of Buckingham at Rennes: but he could not ſucceed. Even the barons, knights and ſquires told him plainly they would not aſſiſt in the deſtruction of their country for the ſake of England, and would never arm themſelves in his behalf ſo long as the Engliſh remained

remained in Brittany. The duke, upon this, remonſtrated with them, and aſked why they had deſired him to ſend for the aid of the Engliſh. They told him, in anſwer, that it was more to give alarm to the king of France and his council, that they might not be deprived of their ancient privileges, than for any thing elſe; and, in caſe the king of France wiſhed them no ill will, they would not make war againſt him. The duke could not obtain any other anſwer.

On the other hand, the lord de Cliſſon, conſtable of France, the lord de Dinant, the lord de Laval, the viſcount de Rohan, the lord de Rochefort, and all the great barons of Brittany, had their caſtles well fortified and guarded They told the duke, or ſent word to him by meſſengers, that he had beſt conſider well what he was about; for he had been ill adviſed in ſending for the Engliſh, and bringing them over to deſtroy and carry war into his country: that he muſt not expect any aid from them: therefore, if he ſhould go to Nantes, to aſſiſt in the ſiege, as they had heard it to be his intention, and which he ought not to have promiſed, they would attack his country on all ſides, and would give him ſo much employment that he ſhould not know what he ought to attend to firſt: but, if he were willing to acknowledge the king of France, and place himſelf under his obedience, as he was bounden to do, they engaged to make his peace with the young king. They added that thoſe who had had the courage to oppoſe king Charles deceaſed might be beloved by the king his ſon.

Such

Such was the treatment the duke met with from the great lords of Brittany, ſo that, in fact, he did not know what to do; for he found he could not place any ſecurity on his barons or ſubjects: it therefore behoved him to diſſemble.

The ſiege of Nantes ſtill continued; and on the day of our Lady, in Advent, the French garriſon reſolved to make another attack on the beſiegers, for they had left them quiet for ſome time. Sir Amaury de Cliſſon, couſin german to the lord de Cliſſon, and the lord d'Amboiſe, made an aſſault, with about two hundred ſpears, on the quarters of ſir William Windſor. They ſallied out at the gate of Richebourg, on the river ſide, where ſir Hugh Calverley's men were that night on guard. The lord d'Amboiſe was made a knight by ſir Amaury de Cliſſon. Theſe men at arms, French and Bretons, advanced in high ſpirits to the ford, which having gained, though guarded by ſir William Coſſington, a ſharp conteſt enſued, in which many a man was overthrown. Sir William Windſor and ſir Hugh Calverley were in their quarters, and, hearing the noiſe, armed themſelves and iſſued forth to the midſt of the tumult, where the conflict mightily increaſed: both parties behaved valiantly. The French and Bretons made good their retreat, fighting all the way, and re-entered the gate of Richebourg with little loſs: they had made a knight with ten men at arms priſoners, and had had only three of their men taken.

On Thurſday, before the eve of Chriſtmas day, Barrois des Barres, with the lord de Solete and ſix

ſcore

ſcore men at arms, made another ſally from the gate of Sauvetout, to beat up the quarters of the earl of Buckingham: the earl of Devonſhire had that night the command of the guard. The engagement was very ſevere, and many were thrown down and wounded by ſpears; but the Engliſh, being in greater force than their enemies, drove them back to their barriers: they loſt, in killed and priſoners, ſixteen. In this attack, an Engliſh knight, called ſir Hugh Kitiel, received a blow on his helmet, with a bolt, that cauſed his death.

Every man then retired to his quarters, and nothing more was done that night: but the captains in Nantes held a council, and reſolved on Chriſtmas eve to make a ſally with the whole garriſon. The earl of Buckingham and the other Engliſh were kept in conſtant alarm by the garriſon, and the foragers had many difficulties in providing provender for the horſes, for they dared not forage but in large companies. The earl and his council were much aſtoniſhed that the duke of Brittany came not, nor ſent them any intelligence, ſo that they began to be very diſcontented. Upon conſidering every thing, they found but a very weak ſupport in him on all occaſions, which they could not account for, nor did they know how to ſeek redreſs for it. They therefore determined to ſend once more ſir Robert Knolles, lord Thomas Percy and ſir Thomas Trivet to Vannes or Hennebon, to remonſtrate with him on the part of the earl, how very ill he had conducted himſelf in not having fulfilled his engagements with greater honour. This reſolution was afterwards

afterwards broken; for, when they more maturely weighed it, they found they could not ſend off this detachment without weakening too much their army, and that they could not go to the duke but with the whole army; for, if they ſhould march only five or ſix hundred lances, and meet with a thouſand or fifteen hundred, the odds would be too great, and they would be ſlain: they therefore did not detach any part of their army.

When the eve of Chriſtmas was come, le Barrois des Barres, ſir Amaury de Cliſſon, the lord d'Amboiſe, the lord de Solete, the châtelain de Cliſſon, John de Châtelmorant, and all the captains in Nantes, ſallied forth in the evening, through St. Peter's gate, with a determination to act well, accompanied by ſix hundred men at arms. On paſſing the gate, they formed themſelves into two diviſions; one of which marched down the ſtreet, and the other through the fields, towards the quarters of the lord Latimer and the lord Fitzwalter. Sir Evan Fitzwarren and ſir William Renton commanded the guard. On the firſt attack, they gained the barriers of the guard, and, killing many, they drove them as far as the quarters of the conſtable, lord Latimer. They halted before the hôtel of the lord Delawarr, where there was a grand engagement; for the French had an intention of conquering this hôtel, which they were on the point of taking and the lord Delawarr in it. The guard ſuffered much before any ſuccours arrived. Sir Evan Fitzwarren, the lord Delawarr and ſir William Drayton, did many gallant deeds. Theſe

aſſaults

aſſaults cauſed the battalions of the conſtable and marſhal to exert themſelves: they ſounded their trumpets, and directly armed. Sir William Windſor and ſir Hugh Calverley, hearing the trumpets, knew the van-guard was engaged: they ordered their trumpets to ſound alſo, and a number of torches to be lighted and their banners diſplayed, with which they marched to the place where the combat was, attended by one hundred men at arms and as many archers. In another part, ſir Thomas Trivet, lord Thomas Percy and lord Baſſet, each with their banners before them, advanced to the ſkirmiſh. Good need had the van-guard of the haſte they made to their relief, for they were on the point of loſing their quarters: but when theſe barons and their men were arrived, they drove back the French and Bretons, who, forming together in a handſome body, retreated towards the town, ſkirmiſhing all the way. Many valiant deeds were done; and ſome young French knights and ſquires, in order to gain honours, ventured too far, ſo that ſir Triſtan de la Jaille was taken, in his fooliſh attempt, by a ſquire from Hainault called Thierry de Sommain.

Thus was this attack made. All thoſe, or at leaſt a part, who had come from Nantes, re-entered it, for, in theſe caſes, there muſt be wounded and ſlain; and, when the heat of an engagement animates, ſuch accidents are to be expected. They returned, however, without much loſs; for they had full as many priſoners from the Engliſh as they had had taken from them. When the gates were

cloſed,

cloſed, they attended to their wounded. The army returned to their quarters, but did not diſmiſs the guard: on the contrary, additions were made to it.

No ſally was attempted on Chriſtmas day, nor on the ſucceeding feaſts. The Engliſh expected to be attacked every night; but what troubled them the moſt was their not receiving any intelligence from the duke of Brittany. Their proviſions were become very ſhort, for it was with difficulty they could forage. The garriſon was well ſupplied, by means of the river Loire, from the rich countries of Poitou, Saintonge and la Rochelle.

CHAP. XLVI.

THE ENGLISH BREAK UP THE SIEGE OF NANTES. —THE DUKE OF BRITTANY SENDS HANDSOME EXCUSES TO THE EARL OF BUCKINGHAM.

AFTER the earl of Buckingham and the Engliſh had been before Nantes two months and four days, they found they could gain nothing, and that the duke of Brittany would not keep any of his engagements, for he neither came nor ſent to them. They thought it beſt to decamp from thence (ſince they could not ſucceed), and march towards Vannes, to have ſome converſation with the duke, and

and know from himſelf the reaſons of his conduct Orders were iſſued for the army to pack up and diſlodge: they decamped, the laſt day of the year, in the ſame order of battle with which they had marched through France, and halted, the day they left Nantes, at Nort, where they remained for three days, on account of the bridge being broken down.

They had much trouble in repairing this bridge, that their carriages might paſs over: however, it was made good and ſtrong, and the army, having alſo croſſed the river Vilaine on a Saturday, took up their quarters ar Lohéac, where they ſtaid two days. When the army left Lohéac, they quartered themſelves at Goſſelin, where they alſo halted for two days, and then they came to la Trinité. They croſſed the river Auſt at the Pont de Boquinio, when the whole army ſtopped on that ſide of the water on the plains.

The inhabitants of Vannes received exact information of the day on which the army decamped, and when they croſſed the river, from the country people, and that the earl of Buckingham was marching his army thither, intending to fix his quarters in their city. They knew not how to act, whether to permit them to come into their town or not they therefore went to the duke at Hennebon; but the day they ſet out they met him, two leagues from Vannes, on his road thither.

The duke perceiving his good ſubjects advancing towards him, aſked them what was the news, and whither

whither they were going. 'My lord,' they replied, 'as for news, we can tell you enough: the earl of Buckingham and the Engliſh are marching hitherward; and it is their intention, as we have been informed, to quarter themſelves in your good town of Vannes. Now, you muſt conſider how you would have us act; for without your order we will not do any thing. In truth, they have repaired the Pont de Boquinio, which was broken down.'

The duke, on hearing theſe words, pauſed a little, and then anſwered; 'God help us! do not you be uneaſy nor alarmed at trifles, for every thing will turn out well. Theſe Engliſh will not do you any harm. I have entered into certain engagements which I muſt perform, and acquit myſelf to them. I am now going to Vannes; and to-morrow, as I verily believe, they will arrive there. I will advance to meet my brother, the earl, and will pay him every honour and reſpect in my power, for truly I am bounden ſo to do. As for the reſt, you will act according to my advice, which is, that you meet him, and preſent him the keys of your town, ſaying, that you and all the town are ready to receive him and to obey his orders, on condition that he ſwear, fifteen days after he ſhall be requeſted to depart, he will march out of the town, and will deliver back to you the keys of it. This is the beſt advice I can give you.'

The citizens of Vannes replied; 'My lord, we will obey your directions.' They then rode on together to Vannes, where the duke lodged that night;

night; and the Engliſh fixed their quarters at St Jean, a ſmall village, ſituated two leagues from Vannes.

The earl of Buckingham received that evening letters from the duke, written with great affection, welcoming him to the neighbourhood of Vannes. On the morrow, when the earl had heard maſs, and drank a cup, he mounted his horſe, and with his whole army marched in great order towards Vannes; firſt the vanguard, then the earl in the centre battalion, the rearguard following cloſe upon him. In this order they met the duke of Brittany, who had come out a long league from Vannes to meet them. Great affection was ſhewn to each other by the duke and earl. After this reception, which was very honourable, they rode together, the earl on the right and the duke on the left, and entered into converſation: the earl ſaid,—'By holy Mary, fair brother of Brittany, we waited moſt impatiently for your arrival at Nantes, during the ſiege, according to the treaty entered into between you and me, and yet you never came.' 'By my faith, my lord,' anſwered the duke, 'I could not any way accompliſh it; and I muſt own to you that I have been exceedingly enraged thereat, but it was not poſſible for me to act otherwiſe; for my ſubjects, notwithſtanding every argument I could uſe, in remonſtrating with them on the treaties I had made with you at their own requeſts, would never agree to march to aſſiſt you in the ſiege of Nantes. The principal barons kept themſelves ready prepared on the borders, ſuch as the lord de

Cliſſon, the lord de Dinant, the lord d'Orval, the viſcount de Rohan and the lord de Rochefort, to guard the entrances of Brittany. All thoſe my adherents and friends, as well knights and prelates as principal towns, are this moment in a ſtate of rebellion; at which I am very much mortified, for by their miſconduct you have reaſon to find fault with me. I will tell you therefore, my lord, what you ſhall do: being now the depth of winter, it is cold and uncomfortable to keep an army in the field: you ſhall come to Vannes, where you will remain until April or May, to recover yourſelves from your fatigues, and I will give orders that your men are taken care of. You will paſs your time as well as you can, and in the ſummer we will revenge ourſelves for all theſe contempts.'

The earl replied, 'May God aſſiſt us!' for he ſaw plainly there was nothing better to be expected. The duke conducted him towards Vannes, when the inhabitants of the town came out in their robes, and, addreſſing the earl, ſaid to him in an amicable manner,—'My lord, out of reſpect to your lordſhip, and in reverence to your great honour, we have not any objections to your entering our town; but we wiſh, in order to ſatisfy the people (otherwiſe you will not be very ſecure), you would ſwear to us, on the holy Evangeliſts, that fifteen days after we ſhall have requeſted you to depart, you will march away with your whole army, without doing or ſuffering to be done to us the leaſt moleſtation.'

'By my troth, none ſhall be done to you,' anſwered

ſwered the earl of Buckingham; 'and I will ſwear and keep it.' They afterwards made the other lords ſwear on their faith, and on the holy Evangeliſts, to keep the ſame engagement as the earl had done, to which they readily aſſented. It behoved them ſo to do, unleſs they had wiſhed to ſleep in the fields.

The diviſion of the army of the earl of Buckingham was quartered in the town of Vannes, and himſelf lodged in the hôtel of the duke, a well built and pleaſantly ſituated caſtle, called la Motte.

The duke of Brittany entertained the Engliſh knights handſomely at dinner in his caſtle of la Motte, and then retired to Sucinio*, where he reſided; but ſometimes he came to Vannes, to viſit the earl and hold conferences with him, and then returned to the place whence he had come.

Lord Latimer, lord Fitzwalter, lord Thomas Percy, ſir Thomas Trivet, and the whole of the van of the army, were to have been quartered at Hennebon; but the inhabitants would not open their gates to them, ſo that they were forced to lodge themſelves in the ſuburbs and in the fields.

Sir Robert Knolles and lord Fitzwarren, with many more, were to have been quartered in Quimpercorentin; but the inhabitants treated them as thoſe of Hennebon had done, and they were obliged to make the ſame ſhifts with the van. Sir William Windſor and the rearward were, by orders of the duke, to lodge at Quimperlé; but they could not,

* Sucinio,—a caſtle near Vannes.—GAZETTEER.

by entreaties nor threats, prevail on the inhabitants to open their gates.

In conſequence, they ſuffered much, from the inclemency of the weather and the ill uſage they met with: what was not worth three farthings was ſold to them for twelve, and hardly could they get any proviſion at ſuch prices. Their horſes periſhed through cold and famine, for they knew not where to collect forage; and, when they went out to ſeek it, they were in great peril, as the adjacent countries were all inimical to them.

The viſcount de Rohan poſſeſſed at that time two ſtrong caſtles in the neighbourhood of Vannes; one was called Caire, and the other Linguighant. In theſe two caſtles, the viſcount had ſtrong garriſons, which, aided by other garriſons of the lord de Cliſſon ſituated on this frontier, ſuch as château Joſſelin, Montagu and Moncontour, did much miſchief to the Engliſh foragers, killing many.

The duke of Brittany could not prevent this; for the lord de Cliſſon, conſtable of France, carried on the war in the name of the king of France, and had in the country numerous bodies of men at arms, ſo that the Engliſh dared not ſtir abroad in ſmall parties. When it is conſidered that they were encamped in the fields, without any intrenchments, it is marvellous they did not ſuffer great loſſes; for thoſe quartered in Vannes could not eaſily aſſiſt thoſe near Quimperlé, Hennebon or Quimpercorentin. To ſay the truth, the duke ſtood boldly forward, and guarded them to the beſt of his abilities, to prevent their deſtruction. He fairly told his

his council, that he had but poorly acquitted himſelf towards the earl and his army of all the promiſes he had made them.

At this time, there were four great barons at Paris, whom the duke had ſent to the king of France to make his peace; the viſcount de Rohan, ſir Charles de Dinan, ſir Guy lord de Laval and ſir Guy lord de Rochefort. Theſe four barons of Brittany had remonſtrated with him in council, during the time the earl of Buckingham was before Nantes, ſeveral times, and with much wiſdom, in ſuch terms as theſe: 'My lord, you ſhew to all the world, that your heart is entirely given to the Engliſh: you have brought into this country Engliſhmen who, if they gain the upper hand, will diminiſh your inheritance. What profit or pleaſure can you have in this great affection for them? Look to the ſituation of the king of Navarre, who put his confidence in them: after having given them poſſeſſion of his town and caſtle of Cherbourg, they have never quitted it, nor ever will, but keep it as their own property. Therefore, if you put them into any of your fortified towns in Brittany, they will not leave them; for daily reinforcements will arrive. See how they keep Breſt; nor have they any thought of ſurrendering it, although it is your inheritance. Be ſatisfied, my lord, with the love of the people of this country, who will never give up the king of France to ſerve and belong to the king of England. If your ducheſs is from England, would you, for that, run the riſk of loſing your whole dukedom, which has coſt you ſo much to

gain, and always continue in a ſtate of warfare? In caſe the country ſhould be againſt you, you will be but as one man. Quit your perſent adviſers; for the king of France whom you did not love is dead, and at preſent there is a young and amiable monarch on the throne, who has good abilities; and thoſe who have hated the father may ſerve the ſon. We undertake to make your peace with him, and bring you to a proper underſtanding with each other. You will continue lord and duke of Brittany with great power, and the Engliſh return to their own country.'

In ſuch words as the above, and others well gloſſed over, had theſe barons remonſtrated ſeveral times with the duke; they had ſucceeded ſo far as to have half gained his conſent to their purpoſe: but he ſtill diſſembled with the king of France and the Engliſh, as well as with his own council, until he ſhould more plainly ſee what would be the event.

The earl of Buckingham and his barons were ignorant of all theſe ſecret intrigues which the four barons above mentioned were carrying on at Paris with the king and his uncles, until the matter was arranged. Prior to their knowledge of it, and before they left Brittany, there were tilts and tournaments held at Vannes, in the preſence of the earl of Buckingham and the lords who were there, of which I will ſpeak; for it is not a thing that I ought to be ſilent about, nor ſhould it be forgotten.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVII.

TILTS AND TOURNAMENTS ARE PERFORMED BEFORE THE EARL OF BUCKINGHAM BETWEEN CERTAIN FRENCH AND ENGLISH KNIGHTS.

AT the time when Gauvain Micaille and Joachim Cator performed their combat before the earl of Buckingham and the Engliſh lords, certain knights and ſquires from France had come as ſpectators to Marchenoir near Blois, when ſir Reginald de Touars, lord de Pouſanges, a baron of Poitou, had ſome words with the lord de Vertain, and ſaid he would like to tilt with him three courſes with the lance and three ſtrokes with the battle-axe. The lord de Vertain, wiſhing not to refuſe, was eager to accommodate him immediately, whatever might be the event: but the earl of Buckingham would not conſent, and forbade the knight at that time to think of it.

What had been ſaid relative to this feat of arms was not forgotten by the two knights. Similar words had paſſed that ſame day between a ſquire from Savoye, called the baſtard Clarius, and Edward Beauchamp, ſon of ſir Robert Beauchamp; and alſo between ſir Triſtan de la Jaille and ſir John d'Ambreticourt, ſir John de Châtelmorant and Jannequin Clinton; and le Gallois d'Aunay and

ſir William Clinton; between ſir Hoyau d'Araines and ſir William France: but theſe were all ſet aſide like the firſt.

During the time the Engliſh were quartered in ths ſuburbs of Nantes, theſe French knights and ſquires were within the town. The lord de Vertain and the others were requeſted by the French knights to deliver them from their engagements while they were before Nantes; but the governors in Nantes would not conſent, and excuſed their friends by ſaying, they were in Nantes, as ſoldiers, intruſted with the guard and defence of the town. Nothing more paſſed until the earl of Buckingham's army were fixed in their quarters at Vannes, Hennebon, Quimperlé and Quimpercorentin, when ſir Barrois des Barres, ſir Hoyau d'Araines, and many other knights and ſquires, came to château Joſſelin, ſeven leagues from Vannes, where the conſtable of France reſided. The count de la Marche with ſeveral knights were alſo there, who were very glad to ſee them, and received them handſomely. They informed the conſtable of all that had paſſed, and that ſuch and ſuch perſons had undertaken deeds of proweſs againſt others of the Engliſh. The conſtable heard this with pleaſure, and ſaid; 'Send to them: we will grant them paſſports, to perform theſe deeds of arms, if they be willing to come.'

Le Gallois d'Aunay and ſir Hoyau d'Araines were the firſt to ſay, they were ready to perform their engagement of three courſes with the ſpear, on horſeback. When ſir William Clinton and ſir William

William France heard they were called upon by the French to perform their challenges, they were much rejoiced, and took leave of the earl and barons of England to go thither. They were accompanied by many knights and ſquires. The Engliſh and French tilted very handſomely, and performed their deeds of arms as the rules required. Then ſir Regnaud de Touars, ſir Triſtan de la Jaille, ſir John de Châtelmorant and the baſtard Clarius, ſummoned each of them his knight or ſquire; that is to ſay the lord de Vertain, ſir John d'Ambreticourt, Edward Beauchamp and Jannequin Clinton. Theſe four were ſo eager for the combat that they wiſhed to go to château Joſſelin on the paſſports of the conſtable; but the earl of Buckingham, hearing at Vannes the ſummons from the French, ſaid aloud to the heralds; 'You will tell the conſtable, from the earl of Buckingham, that he is equally powerful to grant paſſports to the French as he may be to grant them to the Engliſh; and to all thoſe who may wiſh to perform any deeds of arms with his knights, on their arrival at Vannes, he will, out of his affection to them, give paſſports, and to all who may chooſe to accompany them, both for their ſtay and for their return.'

When the conſtable heard this, he inſtantly perceived the earl was in the right, and that he wanted to ſee thoſe deeds of arms: it was but reaſonable there ſhould be as many performed at Vannes as had been before him at château Joſſelin. The conſtable therefore ſaid; 'the earl of Buckingham

ham ſpeaks like a valiant man and a king's ſon, and I will that what he ſays ſhall be believed: let me know thoſe who may be deſirous of accompaying the challengers, and we will ſend for a proper paſſport.' Thirty knights and ſquires immediately ſtepped forth: a herald came to Vannes for the paſſport, which was given to him ſealed by the earl of Buckingham.

The three knights who were to perform their deeds of arms ſet out from château Joſſelin, attended by the others, and came to Vannes, where they were lodged in the ſuburbs, and the Engliſh entertained them well. On the morrow, they made preparations for the combat, as it behoved them to do, and advanced to a handſome ſpace, which was large and even, on the outſide of the town. Afterwards came the earl of Buckingham, the earl of Stafford, the earl of Devonſhire and other barons, with thoſe who were to engage in this deed of arms: the lord de Vertain againſt ſir Regnaud de Thouars, lord de Pouſanges; ſir John d'Ambreticourt againſt Triſtan de la Jaille; Edward Beauchamp againſt the baſtard Clarius de Savoye.

The French took their places at one end of the liſts*, and the Engliſh at the other. Thoſe who

* In the hiſtoire de la vie de Louis III. duc de Bourbon, chap. xliv. p. 160, five combatants are mentioned; ſir John de Châtelmorant, ſir Barrois des Barres, the baſtard of Clairains (probably the ſame as the baſtard of Savoy), the viſcount d'Aunay and ſir Triſtan de la Jaille. The Engliſh were, ſir Walter

who were to tilt were on foot completely armed, with helmets, vizors, and provided with lances of good ſteel from Bourdeaux, with which they performed as follows:

Firſt, the lord de Pouſanges and the lord de Vertain, two barons of high renown and great courage, advanced towards each other on foot, holding their ſharp ſpears in their hands, with a good pace: they did not ſpare themſelves, but ſtruck their lances luſtily againſt each other in puſhing. The lord de Vertain was hit, without being wounded; but the lord de Pouſanges received ſuch a ſtroke that it pierced through the mail and ſteel breaſtplate, and every thing underneath, ſo that the blood guſhed out, and it was a great wonder he was not more ſeriouſly wounded. They finiſhed their three courſes and the other deeds of arms without further miſchief, when they

---

Walter Clopton, Edward Beauchamp, Thomas de Hennefort, Croſby, and ſir John de Tracio, probably Tracy.

Sir John de Châtelmorant tilted with ſir Walter Clopton, and wounded him ſo badly as to prevent the compleating his engagement.

Sir Barrois was oppoſed by Thomas de Hennefort, and theſe finiſhed their career with lances unhurt; but ſir Thomas was wounded too badly with the ſword to continue it.

The baſtard de Clairains vanquiſhed Edward Beauchamp: he reeled ſo much, the Engliſh ſaid he was drunk.

Sir Triſtan de la Jaille conquered his adverſary.

The viſcount d'Aulnay had ſimilar ſucceſs.

Sir William Farrington challenged ſir John de Châtelmorant to complete the engagement which his relation, ſir Walter, had been obliged to relinquiſh, and wounded ſir John, as mentioned in the text, to the great ſcandal of the Engliſh.

retired

retired to repoſe themſelves, and to be ſpectators of the actions of the others.

Sir John d'Ambreticourt, who was from Hainault, and ſir Triſtan de la Jaille, from Poitou, next advanced, and performed their courſes very valiantly, without hurt to either, when they alſo retired.

Then came the laſt, Edward Beauchamp and Clarius de Savoye. This baſtard was a hardy and ſtrong ſquire, and much better formed in all his limbs than the Engliſhman. They ran at each other with a hearty good will: both ſtruck their ſpears on their adverſary's breaſt; but Edward was knocked down on the ground, which much vexed his countrymen. When he was raiſed up, he took his ſpear, and they advanced again to the attack; but the Savoyard drove him backward to the earth, which more enraged the Engliſh: they ſaid, Edward's ſtrength was not a match for this Savoyard, and the devil was in him to make him think of tilting againſt one of ſuch ſuperior force. He was carried off among them, and declared he would not engage further.

When Clarius ſaw this, wiſhing to finiſh his courſe of arms, he ſaid; 'Gentlemen, you do not uſe me well: ſince Edward wiſhes not to go on, ſend me ſome one with whom I may complete my courſes.'

The earl of Buckingham would know what Clarius had ſaid, and, when it was told him, replied, that the Frenchman had ſpoken well and valiantly. An Engliſh ſquire then ſtepped forth, who

who was ſince knighted, and called Jannequin Finchley, and, coming before the earl, kneeled down and entreated his permiſſion to tilt with Clarius, to which the earl aſſented.

Jannequin very completely armed himſelf on the ſpot: then each, ſeizing his ſpear, made thruſts at the other, and with ſuch violence that their ſpears were ſhivered, and the ſtumps of them flew over their heads. They began their ſecond attack, and their lances were again broken: ſo where they in the third. All their lances were broken, which was conſidered by the lords and ſpectators as a deciſive proof of their gallantry. They then drew their ſwords, which were ſtrong; and, in ſix ſtrokes, four of them were broken. They were deſirous of fighting with battle-axes, but the earl would not conſent to more being done, ſaying they had ſufficiently ſhewn their courage and abilities. Upon this, they both retired; when ſir John de Châtelmorant and Jannequin Clinton advanced. This Jannequin was ſquire of honour to the earl of Buckingham, and the neareſt about his perſon; but he was lightly made and delicate in his form. The earl was uneaſy that he ſhould have been matched with one ſo ſtout and renowned in arms as John de Châtelmorant: notwithſtanding, they were put to the trial, and attacked each other moſt vigorouſly; but the Engliſhman could not withſtand his opponent, for, in puſhing, he was very roughly ſtruck to the ground: on which, the earl ſaid, they were not fairly matched. Some of the earl's people came to Jannequin, and

ſaid,—

ſaid,—'Jannequin, you are not ſufficiently ſtrong to continue this combat: and my lord of Buckingham is angry with you for having undertaken it: retire and repoſe yourſelf.' The Engliſhman having retired, John de Châtelmorant ſaid,—'Gentlemen, it ſeems your ſquire is too weak: chooſe another, I beg of you, more to your liking, that I may accompliſh the deeds of arms I have engaged to perform; for I ſhall be very diſgracefully treated if I depart hence without having completed them.'

The conſtable and marſhal of the army replied, 'You ſpeak well and you ſhall be gratified.' It was then told to the ſurrounding knights and ſquires that one of them muſt deliver the lord de Châtelmorant. On theſe words, ſir William Farrington immediately replied,—'Tell him, he ſhall not depart without combating: let him go and repoſe himſelf a little in his chair, and he ſhall ſoon be delivered; for I will arm myſelf againſt him.'

This anſwer was very pleaſing to John de Châtelmorant, who went to his ſeat to reſt himſelf. The Engliſh knight was ſoon ready and in the field. They placed themſelves oppoſite to each other, when taking their lances, they began their courſe on foot to tilt with their ſpears within the four members; for it was eſteemed diſgraceful to hit any part but the body.

They advanced to each other with great courage, completely armed, the vizor down, and helmet tightly fixed on. John de Châtelmorant gave the knight

knight ſuch a blow on the helmet that ſir William Farrington ſtaggered ſome little, on account of his foot ſlipping: he kept his ſpear ſtifly with both hands, and, lowering it by the ſtumble he made, ſtruck John de Châtelmorant on the thighs; he could not avoid it; and the ſpear head paſſed through, and came out the length of one's hand on the other ſide. John de Châtelmorant reeled with the blow, but did not fall.

The Engliſh knights were much enraged at this, and ſaid, it was infamouſly done. The Engliſhman excuſed himſelf by ſaying, 'he was extremely ſorry for it; and if he had thought it would have ſo happened at the commencement of the combat, he would never have undertaken it: but that he could not help it, for his foot ſlipped from the violence of the blow he had received.'

Thus the matter was paſſed over. The French, after taking leave of the earl and other lords, departed, carrying with them John de Châtelmorant in a litter, to château Joſſelin, whence they had come, and where he was in great danger of his life from the effects of this wound.

Theſe deeds of arms being finiſhed, each retired to his home; the Engliſh to Vannes, the French to château Joſſelin.

CHAP. XLVIII.

THE DUKE OF BRITTANY MAKES HIS PEACE WITH THE KING OF FRANCE.—THE ENGLISH RETURN HOME.—A COMBAT BETWEEN AN ENGLISH AND A FRENCH SQUIRE.

AFTER theſe deeds of arms were performed, during the reſidence of the earl of Buckingham at Vannes, nothing happened worth mentioning. The Engliſh, as I have before ſaid, were quartered at Vannes, Hennebon, Quimperlé and Quimpercorentin: they paſſed the whole winter in Brittany as well as they could. Very many of them were ill, and ſuffered much from the badneſs and ſcarcity of proviſion; as did alſo their horſes, for their foragers could not find any thing in the open country, which at that ſeaſon is always bare.

The French had taken every precaution that the enemy ſhould not be very comfortable. The Engliſh were in this perilous ſtate ſome time; for the French were ſo ſtrong in the ſurrounding garriſons, they dared not make any excurſions.

Some proviſions came to them by ſea from Cornwall, Guernſney and the Iſle of Wight, which were of great ſuccour to them; otherwiſe they and their cavalry would have periſhed through famine.

During this time, the four Breton barons remained

mained at Paris on the part of the duke, negotiating a peace between him and the king. He did not oppoſe it; for he ſaw clearly that he could not keep the promiſes he had made the Engliſh, unleſs he would loſe his dukedom.

It was the intention of the earl of Buckingham and his barons to paſs the winter in the town of Vannes as well as they could, and in the ſummer to return to France to continue the war: he had written a full account of his ſituation and intentions to the king of England and to the duke of Lancaſter. The king and his council, having approved of this plan, ordered him to carry it into execution, adding, that at the proper ſeaſon, a reinforcement of Engliſh ſhould be ſent to Normandy and land at Cherbourg; and thoſe two armies, being united in Normandy, might be able to performed ſome deciſive actions in France.

The king of France, his uncles and council foreſaw all that might happen, having been duly informed of the intended plans: they ſaid, in their ſecret councils, that if the duke of Brittany, or any of his principal towns, were at enmity with the realm, and united with the Engliſh force, France would have, for a time, too heavy a burden to bear. For this reaſon, the four barons from Brittany, who repreſented the duke and managed his affairs very well, had thrown out theſe doubts: in particular, they had opened themſelves to the duke of Anjou, at that time regent of France, who having a grand expedition in his head, and intending within two years at the ſartheſt to march to la

Puglia and Calabria, would not have choſen that the kingdom of France ſhould be ſhaken, nor his expedition put off. He was therefore ſtrongly inclined to make peace with the duke of Brittany, that he might become a good Frenchman, loyal in faith and homage to the king of France. The articles of peace were now diſcuſſed by the four barons: it was ſettled that the duke might without blame, aſſiſt the Engliſh with veſſels to return to their own country. The duke was permitted to add to his ordinances; that if thoſe who had come from the garriſon of Cherbourg to ſerve under the earl of Buckingham wiſhed to return thither by land, they ſhould have paſſports from the king and conſtable to march through France, but unarmed, and any knights or ſquires from England who might be deſirous of accompanying them: that, when the Engliſh had quitted Brittany, the duke was to come to the king and his uncles at Paris, and acknowledge himſelf vaſſal by faith and homage to the king, in ſuch way as a duke of Brittany owes to his lord, the king of France.

All theſe articles were properly drawn out and ſealed, and carried to the duke of Brittany, who at that time was reſident at Sucinio, near to Vannes. He agreed to what his ambaſſadors had done, but ſore againſt his inclination; for he knew he could not do it, without incurring the greateſt ill-will from the Engliſh.

When the earl of Buckingham and his knights heard that the duke of Brittany had made peace with France, they were greatly enraged and very indignant,

indignant, ſaying, he had ſent for them and made them come to Brittany, where he had neve performed any one of the promiſes he had ſworn to; for which reaſon they pronounced him void of loyalty.

Shortly after, the duke viſited the earl of Buckingham and his barons at Vannes, when he openly explained to them the treaty his people had made for him, and which it behoved him to agree to, for otherwiſe he ſhould loſe his whole duchy. Upon this, high words paſſed between the earl and his barons with the duke; but the duke humbled and excuſed himſelf as much as poſſible, for he was conſcious that he had been in ſome ſort to blame. It was, however, neceſſary to come to terms, in order that the Engliſh might quit Brittany.

The earl then gave notice to the city of Vannes, that if any of his men were indebted to the inhabitants, they ſhould come forward, when they would be paid. He gave back to the magiſtrates the keys of the town, and thanked them for their attentions to him.

The earl was ſupplied with veſſels at Vannes, Hennebon and Quimperlé, and wherever elſe they had been quartered, on paying for them: he left Vannes the eleventh day of April, in battle-array, with banners diſplayed, and thus marched to the haven. The duke of Brittany, ſir Alain de la Houſſaye, the lord de Montbourſier, ſir Stephen Guyon, ſir William de Treſiquidi, ſir Geoffry de Kerimel and others of his council, came thither: they ſent to

inform the earl, who was in his veſſel, that the duke wanted to ſpeak with him; but the earl refuſed to come and ſent the lord Latimer and lord Thomas Percy.

Theſe two had a conference with the duke for three hours, and, after long debates, conſented to requeſt the earl, that before he ſet ſail, he would on another day have a converſation with the duke: they then went to his ſhip, and related to the earl all that had paſſed.

About midnight, on the return of the tide, the wind became favourable; and the mariners aſked the earl what were his intentions. The earl, who wiſhed not for any further conferences, ſaid, 'Weigh your anchor and ſet your ſails, and let us be gone.' This was ſoon done; and thus did the Engliſh ſail from the harbour of Vannes for England. All the others did the ſame in their different ports, and collected together at ſea.

We will now ſpeak of certain knights and ſquires who returned to Cherbourg by land, and relate what befel them on their road. The conſtable of France, who at that time reſided at château Joſſelin, ſeven leagues from Vannes, had granted paſſports to ſome Engliſh and Navarre knights of the garriſon of Cherbourg, who had ſerved under the earl of Buckingham. Among others were ſir John Harleſtone, governor of Cherbourg, ſir Evan Fitzwarren, ſir William Clinton and ſir John Burley. They ſet out from Vannes, following the road to château Joſſelin, for it was in their route. On their arrival, they took up their

their quarters in the town below the caſtle, not intending more than to dine and continue their journey. When they had diſmounted at the inn, like travellers who wiſhed to repoſe themſelves, the knights and ſquires of the caſtle came to viſit them as brother-ſoldiers, who always ſee each other with pleaſure, particularly the French and Engliſh.

Among the French, there was a ſquire of great renown in arms, who belonged to John de Bourbon, count de la Marche, the neareſt to his perſon of all his ſquires, and whom he loved the moſt: his name was John Boucmel. He had formerly been in garriſon in Valogne with ſir William des Bordes, and in his expedition againſt Cherbourg. During that time, he had often had words with an Engliſh ſquire, called Nicholas Clifford, who was then preſent, reſpecting a tilting match. In the courſe of the converſation which theſe French knights and ſquires held at the inn with the Engliſh, John Boucmel, recollecting Clifford, cried out,—'Nicholas Clifford! Ah! Nicholas, Nicholas, we have often wiſhed and ſought to perform a tilting match; but we never could find fit opportunity or place for it. Now, as we are here before my lord conſtable and thoſe gentlemen, let us perform it: I therefore demand from you three courſes with a lance.' 'John,' replied Nicholas, 'you know that we are here but as travellers on our road, under the paſſport of my lord conſtable: what you aſk from me cannot now be complied with, for I am not the principal in the paſſport,

but under the command of theſe knights whom you ſee: if I were to ſtay behind, they would ſet out without me.' 'Ha, Nicholas, do not make ſuch excuſes as theſe: let your friends depart, if they pleaſe, for I give you my promiſe, that as ſoon as our tilt ſhall be over, I will conduct you myſelf within the gates of Cherbourg without loſs or peril, as I can depend on my lord conſtable's good will.'

Nicholas, ſaid,—'Now ſuppoſe it to be as you ſay, and that I place my confidence in being ſafely conducted by you, yet you ſee we are travelling through the country without arms of any ſort: therefore, if I were willing to arm myſelf, I have not wherewithal to do ſo.'

John replied,—'You ſhall not excuſe yourſelf that way, for I will tell you what I will do: I have plenty of arms at my command, and will order different ſorts to be brought to the place where we ſhall tilt; and, when all are laid out, you ſhall examine them, and conſider which will ſuit you beſt; for I will leave the choice to you, and, when you ſhall have choſen, I will then arm myſelf.'

When Nicholas ſaw himſelf ſo earneſtly preſſed, he was aſhamed that thoſe preſent ſhould have heard it, and thought, that ſince John made ſuch handſome offers, he could not in honour refuſe them; for John ſtill added, 'Make whatever arrangements you pleaſe, I will agree to them ſooner than we ſhould not having a tilting match.'

Nicholas then ſaid, he would conſider of it; and, before his departure he would make him acquainted with his reſolution; adding, 'if it will not be

be poſſible for me to comply with your requeſt at this place, and if my lords, under whom I am, ſhould be unwilling to aſſent to it, on my return to Cherbourg, if you will come to Valogne, and ſignify to me your arrival, I will immediately haſten thither, and deliver you from your engagement.'

'No, no,' ſaid John, 'ſeek not for excuſes: I have offered you ſuch handſome propoſals, that you cannot in houour depart without running a tilt with me, according to the demand I make.' Nicholas was more enraged than before; for he thought, and true it was, that he, by ſuch a ſpeech, greatly outraged his honour. Upon this, the French returned to the caſtle, and the Engliſh to their inn, where they dined.

When theſe knights had got to the caſtle, you may ſuppoſe they were not ſilent on the words which had paſſed between John Boucmel and Nicholas Clifford, inſomuch that the conſtable heard of them. He conſidered a ſhort time; and, when the knights and ſquires of the country who were with him entreated him to intereſt himſelf that this combat might be fought, he willingly promiſed it.

The Engliſh knights and ſquires, wiſhing to purſue their journey after dinner, went to the caſtle to wait on the conſtable; for he was to give them ſeven knights to eſcort them the whole road, through Brittany and Normandy, as far as Cherbourg.

When they were arrived at the caſtle, the conſtable received them very amicably, and then ſaid, —'I put you all under arreſt, and forbid you to

depart hence this day: to-morrow morning, after maſs, you ſhall witneſs the combat between your ſquire and ours, and then you ſhall dine with me. Dinner over, you ſhall ſet out, and I will give you good guides to conduct you to Cherbourg.' They complied with his requeſts, and, having drank of his wine, returned to their inn. Now the two ſquires conſulted together, for it was fixed they ſhould on the morrow morning engage without fail. When morning came, they both heard maſs, confeſſed themſelves, and mounted their horſes; the French being on one ſide, and the Engliſh on the other: they rode together to a ſmooth plain on the outſide of the caſtle, where they diſmounted. John Boucmel had provided there two ſuits of armour, according to his promiſe, which were good and ſtrong, as the occaſion demanded: having had them diſplayed, he told the Engliſh ſquire to make the firſt choice. 'No,' ſaid the Engliſhman, 'I will not chooſe: you ſhall have the choice.' John was therefore forced to chooſe firſt, which he did, and armed himſelf completely (in doing which he was aſſiſted), as a good man at arms ſhould be. Nicholas did the ſame. When they were both armed, they graſped their ſpears, well made with Bourdeaux ſteel and of the ſame length; and each took the poſition proper for him to run his courſe, with their helmets and vizors cloſed. They then advanced, and, when they approached pretty near, they lowered their ſpears, aiming them to hit each other. At the firſt onſet, Nicholas Clifford ſtruck with his ſpear John Boucmel on the upper part of his

his breaſt; but the point ſlipped off the ſteel breaſt-plate, and pierced the hood, which was of good mail, and, entering his neck, cut the jugular vein, and paſſed quite through, breaking off at the ſhaft with the head; ſo that the truncheon remained in the neck of the ſquire, who was killed, as you may ſuppoſe. The Engliſh ſquire paſſed on to his chair, where he ſeated himſelf. The French lords, who had ſeen the ſtroke and the broken ſpear in his neck, haſtened to him: they immediately took off his helmet, and drew out the ſpear. On its being extracted, he turned himſelf about without uttering a word, and fell down dead. The Engliſh ſquire hurried to his relief, crying out to have the blood ſtaunched, but could not arrive before he expired. Nicholas Clifford was then exceedingly vexed, for having by ill fortune ſlain a valiant and good man at arms. All who at that time could have ſeen the deſpair of the count de la Marche, who had ſuch an affection for his deceaſed ſquire, would ſurely have much pitied him: he was in the greateſt diſtreſs, for he eſteemed him above all others.

The conſtable was preſent, and endeavoured to comfort him, ſaying, 'that ſuch things were to be expected in ſimilar combats. It has turned out unfortunate for our ſquire, but the Engliſhman could not help it.' He then addreſſed himſelf to the Engliſh,—'Come, come to dinner, for it is ready.' The conſtable led them, as I may ſay, againſt their wills to the caſtle to dinner, for they wiſhed not to go there on account of the death of the Frenchman.

The

The count de la Marche moſt tenderly bewailed his ſquire, as he viewed his corpſe. Nicholas Clifford directly retired to his lodgings, and would not by any means dine at the caſtle, as well for the great vexation he was in for this death as on account of his relations and friends: but the conſtable ſent to ſeek for him, and it was neceſſary he ſhould comply.

On his arrival, the conſtable ſaid,—'In truth, Nicholas, I can very well believe, and I ſee by your looks, that you are much concerned for the death of John Bouemel; but I acquit you of it, for it was no fault of yours, and, as God is my judge, if I had been in the ſituation you were in, you have done nothing more than I would have done, as it is better to hurt one's enemy than to be hurt by him. Such is the fate of war.'

They then ſeated themſelves at table, and theſe lords dined at their eaſe. After they had finiſhed their repaſt, and drank their wine, the conſtable called the lord le Barrois des Barres, and ſaid to him,—'Barrois, prepare yourſelf: I will that you conduct theſe Engliſhmen as far as Cherbourg, and that you have opened to them every town and caſtle, and have given to them whatever they ſhall be in need of.' Le Barrois replied,—'My lord, I ſhall cheerfully obey your orders.'

The Engliſh then, taking leave of the conſtable and the knights with him, came to their lodgings, where every thing was packed up and ready. They mounted their horſes, departed from château Joſſelin, and rode ſtraight to Pontorſon and Mont

St.

St. Michel. They were under the eſcort of that gallant knight le Barrois des Barres, who never quitted them in Brittany or Normandy, until they had arrived in Cherbourg.

In this manner did the army of the earl of Buckingham quit France by ſea and by land. We will now return to the affairs of Flanders during that period, and ſay how the men of Ghent behaved themſelves, and how the earl of Flanders, their lord, perſiſted in continuing an oppreſſive and heavy war.

CHAP. XLIX.

THE WAR RECOMMENCES BETWEEN THE EARL OF FLANDERS AND THE INHABITANTS OF GHENT. —THE MEN OF GHENT AND OF YPRES ARE DISCOMFITED BY THE AMBUSCADES OF THE EARL OF FLANDERS.

TRUE it is, that the earl of Flanders at the beginning had very litte dread of the Flemings and men of Ghent, imagining he could conquer them by little and little, both by reaſon and arms, ſince John Lyon and John Pruniaux were dead: but the men of Ghent had ſtill able captains in whom wholly they truſted, and by whom they were governed; ſuch as Raſſe de Harzelle, captain of the

the caſtlewick of Ghent, and John de Launoy, captain of the men of Courtray. There were other captains; John Boule, Peter du Bois, Arnoul le Clerc and Peter la Nuitée.

At this period, there aroſe a conteſt between the grandees and populace of Bruges; the ſmall handicraft trades there wiſhed to act according to their own inclinations, which the richer ſort would not ſuffer. This cauſed a rebellion, and great numbers of fullers and weavers loſt their lives before the reſt were appeaſed. The inhabitants ſent information of all this to the earl, who reſided at Lille, entreating of him, for the love of God, to come to them; for they acknowledged him as their lord, and were at that moment maſters of the populace.

The earl of Flanders was pleaſed on hearing this intelligence: he ſet out from Lille, in company with ſir William de Namur and a great number of knights and ſquires of Flanders, and came to Bruges, where he was received with great joy by the council. On the arrival of the earl at Bruges, all the leaders, and thoſe who were even ſuſpected to have ſimilar intentions with the men of Ghent, were arreſted and ſent to priſon, to the amount of five hundred, who in a ſhort time were beheaded.

When thoſe of the Franconate* learnt that the earl was quiet in Bruges, they began to be alarmed,

* Du Franc. That part of Flanders, in which the towns of Dunkirk, Bergues, Gravelines, Bombourg and Furnes are ſituated, is called the Franc, or the Franconate.

Nov. in Memoires de l'Academie, vol. xx. p. 419.

and

and immediately threw themſelves on the mercy of the earl, who pardoned them, to their great joy; for his power was daily increaſing; and the inhabitants of the Franconate have been always more attached to their earl than all the reſt of Flanders.

The earl, ſeeing himſelf maſter of Bruges and of the Franc, and that he had at his orders knights and ſquires from Hainault and Artois, thought he had now a good opportunity to recover his country and to puniſh the rebels: he therefore declared he would firſt pay a viſit to Ypres. He hated them much for having ſo eaſily opened their gates to thoſe of Ghent, and ſaid that thoſe who by treaty had admitted his enemies within the town, and ſlain his knights, ſhould pay dearly for it, if he ſhould gain the upper hand of them. He then iſſued his ſummons to the Franc and Bruges, for he was reſolved to march to Ypres.

News was carried to Ypres, that the earl was preparing to attack them: they determined, in conſequence, to ſend to Ghent to aſk aſſiſtance; for they were not in ſufficient ſtrength to hold out without ſuccours from that party, who had always promiſed to help them in their need. They ſent ſecretly letters and meſſages to the captains in Ghent, to inform them of the ſituation of the earl, and his menaces of coming to attack them.

The men of Ghent conſidered themſelves as bound by their faith and oaths to grant their requeſt, and having called two captains, John Boule and Arnoul le Clerc, ſaid to them,—'You will take three thouſand of our men, and march in haſte

to

to Ypres, to ſuccour our good friends.' Soon after this order was given, the detachment marched from Ghent, and three thouſand men arrived at Ypres, to the great joy of the inhabitants.

The earl of Flanders ſet out from Bruges with a large force, and came to Thorout: on the morrow to Poperingue, where they halted for three days, until his whole army was come up, which amounted to twenty thouſand men.

The men of Ghent being informed of all theſe preparations, and that the earl was to march againſt Ypres with a powerful army, reſolved to aſſemble their whole force, and take the road by Courtray to Ypres, when, by uniting with thoſe of the laſt town, they might engage the earl's army; and, if they ſhould once completely defeat him, he would never be able to recover the blow. In conſequence of this determination, the following captains marched from Ghent: Raſſe de Harzelle, Peter du Bois, Peter la Nuitée, John de Launoy, with others, who were captains of hundreds or of fifties in the different pariſhes; and, when drawn out in the plain, they amounted to upwards of nine thouſand men.

They marched for Courtray, where they were received with great joy, for John de Launoy was governor. The earl of Flanders, whoſe quarters were at Poperingue, heard how thoſe of Ghent intended marching to Ypres, and that they were already at Courtray. Upon this, he called a council, and kept his army in a compact body. The Ghent men who had come to Courtray marched from thence to Rouſſelaer, where they halted, and ſent to inform

thoſe

thoſe of Ypres of their arrival; and, if they would come forth with the troops they had ſent to them, they ſhould be in ſufficient force to combat the earl.

The men of Ypres were delighted at this intelligence; and, having every inclination to do what had been requeſted, they ſallied out in the morning, to the amount of eight thouſand, under the command of John Boule and Arnoul le Clerc.

The earl, who was with his army in that diſtrict, got information, I know not by what means or by what accident, that the men of Ypres had marched to join thoſe from Ghent: he therefore ordered two large ambuſcades on a paſs through which thoſe from Ypres muſt march, under the command of his ſon, le Haze baſtard of Flanders, and the lord d'Anghien: there were knights and ſquires from Hainault, Artois, Bruges and the Franconate, and in each ambuſcade were ten thouſand men.

When thoſe of Ypres and the Ghent men who had been ſent thither under the command of John Boule were in the plains, and had marched about a league, they came to two roads; one of which led to Rouſſelaer, and the other to Thorout: they halted, and aſked which road they ſhould take. Arnoul le Clerc, anſwering, ſaid,—'I would adviſe you to go and ſee our men who are at Rouſſelaer.' 'By my troth,' replied John Boule, 'I think we ſhall be better lodged on Mont d'Or than any where elſe; for be aſſured I know ſo well Peter du Bois and Raſſe de Harzelle that, ſince they have ſent to us to ſay they intend to offer the earl battle, they will

will get as near to him as they can: I therefore think you ſhould follow this road.' Arnoul le Clerc diſputed, but John Boule inſiſted upon it, and made them follow his road.

When they had advanced about two leagues, and were almoſt tired, they fell into the midſt of theſe two ambuſcades, which when they perceived, they cried out, 'We are betrayed!' No people ever made ſo poor a defence as theſe did: they ſaved themſelves as faſt as they could, ſome returning to Ypres, others flying over the fields, without any ſort of order.

The earl's army had ſurrounded a great number, whom they ſlew without mercy: however, John Boule and Arnoul le Clerc ſaved themſelves. The runaways who made for Courtray met their allies, who had ſet out from Rouſſelaer, and were marching towards Roſebecque. When Peter du Bois and the other officers ſaw them in ſuch a ſtate, they demanded the reaſon of it, and what had happened: they replied, 'they could not tell; they had not had time to ſee what was the matter; but that they were flying, having been betrayed, and that the whole plain was covered with them.'

Peter du Bois was doubtful, whether to march back to cover the runaways, and to combat thoſe who were thus chacing them, or to retreat with them to Courtray. All things conſidered, he was adviſed this time to retreat, as being the moſt advantageous: he therefore began his return in regular order, without quitting the road, and the ſame day came back to Courtray. The runaways

took

took ſhelter there: the men of Ghent were quartered in the town, and placed ſtrong guards at the gates to prevent any ſurpriſe.

When John Boule and Arnoul le Clerc were returned, and had counted their men, they found there had been ſlain of the men of Ghent, including thoſe in the detachment ſent to Ypres, twelve hundred; and of thoſe of Ypres as many, if not more. If the ambuſcade had purſued thoſe flying towards Ypres and Courtray, they muſt have been overtaken, and ſcarcely one would have eſcaped: but the giving up the purſuit, to ſlay thoſe who had fallen into their hands, was the ſaving of many.

The inhabitants of Ypres were much caſt down on ſeeing their men return defeated the very day they had marched, and aſked how it could have happened. Some ſaid, that John Boule had betrayed them, and led them thus to be ſlaughtered. You have often heard how difficult it is to appeaſe the populace when once they are ſtirred up: I ſhall inſtance it by thoſe of Ghent, for when they had returned thus defeated to Courtray, and heard that John Boule was in the town, they collected upwards of a thouſand, bawling out; 'Let us go ſeek that arch traitor John Boule, who has betrayed us! for it was he and no other who would have us follow that road which led to the ambuſcade. If we had believed Arnoul le Clerc, we ſhould have eſcaped it; for he wanted to conduct us ſtraight to our men, and John Boule, who had ſold and betrayed us, would march us where we have been tricked and defeated.' Now, obſerve how unjuſtly they

 acculſe

accuſe him of treaſon, when I do not ſee that there was the leaſt cauſe for it. Had it been, as they ſaid, that he had ſold and betrayed them, he would never have returned, but would have ſtaid with the earl and his army. This, however, could not ſave him from being killed; the men of Ghent ſought for him in his houſe, and, having found him, dragged him into the ſtreet, when he was torn in pieces, and as many as could, carried off a morſel. Such was the end of John Boule.

The next day, the men of Ghent departed from Courtray, and returned home. They ſent John de Launoy to Gavre, a caſtle belonging to the earl, and ſituated on the Scheld, of which he took poſſeſſion, and placed a garriſon in it.

CHAP. L.

THE TOWNS OF YPRES AND COURTRAY TURN TO THE EARL OF FLANDERS.—GHENT IS BESIEGED

WE will now return to the earl of Flanders and his army. When they had thus, by their ambuſcades, defeated the men of Ghent, and had ſlain three thouſand or thereabouts, including thoſe of Ypres, the earl was adviſed to advance and lay ſiege to Ypres. This council he followed, and marched thither with a fine army of knights and ſquires

ſquires from Hainault, Artois and Flanders, who had come to ſerve under him. As ſoon as the citizens of Ypres learnt that the earl was on his march thither with ſuch a force, they were greatly alarmed; and the principal and richeſt inhabitants held a council, in which they reſolved to open their gates, and go out to meet him, with offers to replace themſelves under his obedience, truſting to his mercy. It was well known to him that they had allied themſelves with Ghent through fear of the lower ranks, ſuch as weavers, fullers and other ill-intentioned people of the town: they beſides depended on his kind and merciful character for their pardon.

As they had reſolved, ſo did they execute; and upwards of three hundred in a company went out of the town, carrying the keys of the gates with them. On meeting the earl of Flanders, they fell on their knees, and begged for mercy, ſaying, that they perſonally, and the whole town, reſigned themſelves to his will.

The earl took pity on them, made them riſe, and granted them his pardon. He entered the town of Ypres with his whole army, and there remained for three weeks, ſending back thoſe of the Franc and of Bruges to their ſeveral towns. During his reſidence in Ypres, he had upwards of ſeven hundred weavers and fullers beheaded, and all thoſe who had been any way concerned in admitting John Lyon and the Ghent men into the town, who had ſlain the knights and men at arms whom he had

ſent thither, and which had enraged him ſo much. To prevent them from again rebelling againſt him, he ſent three hundred of the principal inhabitants to priſon in Bruges, eſcorted by a handſome body of men at arms.

He then marched towards Courtray, in order to bring that town under his obedience. When the inhabitants heard this was his intention, and that he was on his way, having ſubjugated thoſe of Ypres, they were much afraid, for they ſaw no appearance of any aid coming to them from Ghent: they therefore determined to ſurrender themſelves amicably to their lord; for it was better to depend on the earl, to whom they owed fidelity, homage and loyalty, than on Ghent. Upon this, three hundred of the principal citizens aſſembled, and went out of the town on foot, to meet the earl, taking the keys with them. When the earl was near to paſs them, they flung themſelves on their knees, crying out to him for mercy. The earl, taking compaſſion on them, pardoned them, and made a joyful entry into the town, where every one paid him honour and reverence. He arreſted about two hundred of the principal inhabitants, whom he ſent to Lille and to Douay, as hoſtages for the town.

When he had continued at Courtray ſix days, he returned to Bruges; where, having repoſed himſelf for a fortnight, he iſſued a grand ſummons for his vaſſals to attend him at the ſiege of Ghent, for at this time all Flanders was dependant on him. He

left

left Bruges with a numerous army to lay ſiege to Ghent, and fixed his quarters at a place called la Briete.

Sir Robert de Namur came thither to ſerve him, with a large body of men at arms, according to his letters and orders: but ſir William de Namur could not come, for he was at the time in France with the king and duke of Burgundy.

It was about the feaſt of the decollation of St. John that the ſiege of Ghent was commenced. Sir Walter, lord of Anghien, was marſhal of the army of Flanders: he was young, bold, enterpriſing, and fearleſs of whatever dangers or perils might befal him.

Notwithſtanding the earl of Flanders was before Ghent with ſo numerous an army, he could not prevent the town from having two or three gates open, by which means all ſorts of proviſion entered without danger. The Brabanters and Liegeois were very favourable to them, more particularly the citizens of Bruſſels. The Liegeois wrote to them to keep up their ſpirits,—'Good men of Ghent, we are well aware that at this preſent you have enough to do; that you are hard puſhed by the earl your lord, and by the gentry and the reſt of the country, which we are extremely ſorry for: know, that if you were only five or ſix leagues from our frontiers, we would ſend that ſuccour which ought to be given to good brothers, friends and neighbours; but you are too far from us, and the country of Brabant lies between, which is the cauſe that prevents us. Now, if you ſhould be be-

ſieged at this moment, do not be caſt down; for God knows, and all the principal towns, that you have juſtice on your ſide in this war, which muſt make your labours more effective.' Thus did the citizens of Liege write to thoſe of Ghent, in order to comfort them.

The earl of Flanders had inveſted Ghent on the ſides towards Bruges and Courtray; but on thoſe towards Bruſſels and les Quatre Meſtiers*, he could not, on account of the Scheld and Lys. I may therefore ſay, every thing conſidered, that Ghent is one of the ſtrongeſt places in the world: it would be neceſſary to have two hundred thouſand men, if any one wiſhed to block up all the paſſes: beſides, the armies ought to be near the rivers, or, in time of need, they would not be able to co-operate with each other; for Ghent is very populous, and full of determined men. They found, on numbering the inhabitants at this time, they had eighty thouſand men, all fit for bearing arms, under ſixty and above fifteen years.

When the earl had been before Ghent about a month, and his men under the lord d'Anghien, le Haze his ſon, with the young ſénéſchal of Hainault, had had various ſkirmiſhes with thoſe of Ghent, in which ſometimes they won, and at others loſt, as in ſuch caſes will happen, he was adviſed to ſend the

* The territory comprehended under the name of Le Quâtre Meſtiers, was formerly ſubject to the biſhop of Utrecht, and contained thirty villages. Hulſe, Axele, Bocholle and Aſſenede are the four principal towns: the two laſt are not incloſed with walls.—*Blaeu's Atlas.*

men

men from Bruges, Ypres and Poperingue, on an expedition to a place called Longpont, the conqueſt of which would be highly advantageous; for by this they could enter the Quatre Meſtiers, and then approach Ghent as near as they pleaſed.

Thoſe who had been ordered on this expedition were drawn up, and a very valiant and prudent knight, called ſir Joſſe de Haluin, was nominated commander: with him were very many knights and ſquires, but ſir Joſſe was the chief. When they arrived at Longpont, they did not find it defenceleſs, but garriſoned with a great number of men at arms: Peter du Bois, Peter la Nuitée and Raſſe de Harzelle were there in front. The ſkirmiſh was ſevere; for, on the arrival of the detachment from the earl, they began on both ſides to ſhoot from cannons and croſs-bows, which ſlew and wounded many. The men of Ghent behaved too well, for they drove back their enemies, and took by force the banner of the goldſmith's company of Bruges, which they flung into the river and beſmeared with filth. There were, of this goldſmith's company and of many others, numbers ſlain and wounded: in particular ſir Joſſe de Haluin was killed, which was a great pity. So valiantly did the Ghent men behave that thoſe who had been ſent to Longpont returned diſcomfited.

CHAP. LI.

THE EARL OF FLANDERS RAISES THE SIEGE OF GHENT.—HE DEFEATS A GREAT PART OF THE ARMY OF GHENT, THROUGH THE SELF-SUFFICIENCY OF RASSE DE HARZELLE, NEAR TO NEVELE.

DURING the ſiege of Ghent by the earl of Flanders, there were numerous ſkirmiſhes before the city. The lord d'Anghien, the ſénéſchal of Hainault and le Haze de Flanders never ranſomed thoſe whom they fell in with unprotected in the plains; and ſometimes they were forced to retreat in ſuch a hurry as not to have time to look behind them.

Six thouſand well-appointed men were drawn up in the city, and put under the command of Raſſe de Harzelle, Arnoul le Clerc and John de Launoy: they marched from Ghent without any fear of the army, and took the road to Aloſt, which was then a good town and well incloſed, in which the earl had placed a garriſon of ſeveral knights. They, on hearing of this intended attack, made off, through the gate leading to Bruſſels, in haſte, otherwiſe they would have been ſlain. The Ghent men burnt every thing, even the gates, and gained great pillage.

They then marched to Dendremonde, which is a ſtrong

ſtrong town; but they took it by ſtorm. Sir Philip de Namur was there killed. The men of Ghent were maſters of the town, but not of the caſtle; for the lord de Wideſcot and his companions held it out valiantly againſt them.

The Ghent army went next to Gramont, which had lately turned to the earl, through the entreaty and negotiation of the lord d'Anghien. I know not whether by treachery or not, but the Ghent men entered it, and very many of the inhabitants were ſlain.

After theſe exploits, they returned to Ghent with a great booty.

When the earl of Flanders conſidered that, beſide loſing his time, he was at a vaſt expenſe in this ſiege, and that he and his army were ſuffering greatly, and alſo that he could not prevent the Ghent men from ſallying forth and burning the country; that lately they had conquered Dendremonde and Gramont; he reſolved to break up the ſiege and depart, for winter was approaching. He marched away, and ſent his men to their different homes to recruit themſelves. He ordered the lord d'Anghien and the lord de Montigny to garriſon Oudenarde: they had, beſides men at arms, two hundred Engliſh archers, on whom they placed great dependance. With regard to the earl, he went to Bruges. The lords who were in Oudenarde made ſeveral ſallies againſt thoſe of Ghent; and there were frequent ſkirmiſhes, for they were almoſt conſtantly in the field, ſo that none could carry

proviſion

proviſion or merchandiſe to Ghent without riſk of being taken.

When winter was over, and the month of April arrived, the earl aſſembled his army, having ſent for thoſe of Ypres, Courtray, Poperingue, Damme, Sluys and the Franconate: he marched from Bruges and came to Nevele, where he remained ſome time. While there, he appointed the lord d'Anghien again commander in chief of all the men at arms, comprehending thoſe of Lille, Douay and Oudenarde.

The earl's army was fully twenty thouſand men: they prepared to march to Gavre, where John de Launoy reſided, who, on receiving intelligence of this, ſent off directly to Ghent, to inform Raſſe de Harzelle that he muſt ſend him immediate reinforcements, for the army of the earl had taken the field. Raſſe de Harzelle inſtantly collected ſix thouſand men, and marched to Gavre: he did not find John de Launoy, but overtook him at Deynſe, where he was pillaging the country on the other ſide of the river. They then, having united their forces, marched that day together, and fell in with thoſe from Oudenarde and Deynſe who were going to join the earl, whom they immediately attacked, and ſlew at leaſt ſix hundred of them. The lord d'Anghien was not preſent: he had gone before to the earl, who was with his army between Deynſe and Bruges.

When news was brought to the earl, and to the lord d'Anghien, that the men of Oudenarde had been

been ſo roughly treated, they were much vexed: the lord d'Anghien was ordered to march with four thouſand men towards Gavre, where they expected to find John de Launoy; but he had retreated to Ghent with his pillage and priſoners, of whom, indeed, he had no great number. On the morrow, he and Raſſe de Harzelle marched out with ten thouſand men; and, though the earl was not come to Gavre, they were anxious to ſurround him.

The ſame day that Raſſe de Harzelle had marched from Ghent, Peter du Bois made a ſally alſo with ſix thouſand men, accompanied by Arnoul le Clerc: they burnt the ſuburbs of Courtray, and then retreated towards Deynſe, in order to fall in with their townſmen; but it was too late, for, when Raſſe de Harzelle and John de Launoy were come to Nevele, they perceived the earl with his whole army in the plain: thus did theſe two armies find themſelves in ſight of each other, without either of them ſuſpecting it in the morning.

When Raſſe de Harzelle and John de Launoy ſaw a battle was inevitable, they were not caſt down, but drew up their men in three battalions; in each battalion were two thouſand men, all bold and hardy, and the beſt ſoldiers in Ghent.

Peter du Bois and Arnoul le Clerc had an equal number of men, who, though in the country, were ignorant of this meeting, or that their friends were about to engage. When they left Ghent, they had entered into an agreement, that if either party ſhould meet the earl, they were not to fight without the other; for they were not ſeparately of ſufficient

ſtrength,

ſtrength, but, when united, they were able to engage with three times their number: this they had ſworn to Peter du Bois they would adhere to; and to ſay the truth, if Raſſe had wiſhed it, he might eaſily have delayed the combat, for he had only to keep himſelf in the town of Nevele to wait for Peter du Bois, and the earl would never there have fought him: but the moment Raſſe de Harzelle ſaw the army of the earl, through pride and ſelf-ſufficiency, he took the field, ſaying to himſelf that he would offer battle to his enemies, and reap all the honour, without waiting for Peter du Bois or the others. He had great confidence in his men, and ſuch hopes in the good fortune of Ghent that he thought he could not be defeated; and he manifeſted that day his willingneſs to engage, as I ſhall preſently relate to you.

Greatly was the earl rejoiced when he ſaw Raſſe de Harzelle march out of Nevele to the plain to fight. He immediately ordered his men to be drawn up in proper order: his infantry were about twenty thouſand, able men, and about fifteen hundred lances, knights and ſquires, from Flanders, Hainault, Brabant and Artois. Among thoſe from Hainault were the lord d'Anghien, marſhal of the army, and, in his company, the lord de Montigny, the baſtard of Anghien, Giles de Riſcon, Hutin de Lay, the lord of Lens, ſir John de Berlammont and ſeveral more. From Flanders were, the lord de Guiſtelles, ſir Guy de Guiſtelles, the lord des Cornets, the lord de Hallue, the lord de Haluin, ſir Daniel de Haluin, ſir Thierry de Diſquetane, ſir John

John d'Eſcoumbouc, the lord de Gentus, ſir John de Vilain, ſir Gerard de Marquellies and many others. Several new knights were alſo made. The young ſénéſchal of Hainault had died in his bed ſome time before, from the bruiſe he had received at Aubiez, near Mortaigne, for he had been in that affair.

The earl formed his army in five battalions, and in each there were about five thouſand men, eager for the attack: the lord de Lieureghien bore that day the earl's banner. In this manner they advanced on the enemy, five battalions to three; but at the commencement only three battalions of the earl's army engaged, the other two were on the wings to ſupport thoſe who might be broken. The earl was preſent, exhorting his men to behave well, and to revenge themſelves on the madmen of Ghent who had given them ſo much trouble: he ſaid to the citizens from the chief towns,—'Be aſſured, ſhould you fly, you would more certainly be put to death than if you ſtood your ground; for I will have you all beheaded without mercy.' The earl poſted the men of Bruges in the firſt battalion, thoſe of the Franc in the ſecond, thoſe of Ypres and Coutray in the third, and thoſe of Poperingue, Caſſel, Bergues and Bourbourg in the fourth battalion: he had retained thoſe of Oudenarde, Lille and Douay near his perſon.

The armies kept advancing toward each other. Raſſe de Harzelle led the firſt battalion, for it was compoſed of the moſt determined men of the three, and becauſe he was anxious to be the firſt to begin the

the combat, and to gain honour if it were poſſible: he attacked that of Bruges, which the lord de Guiſtelles and his brothers commanded. There was great puſhing and fighting at the commencement. In another part, the other battalions engaged, when many were beat down at the onſet. The Ghent men behaved very gallantly; but the army of the earl was too numerous for them.

The battle was ſharp, and laſted ſome time, ſo that it was long before it was ſeen which had the advantage. All the battalions were intermixed; and on one ſide they ſhouted out, 'Flanders for the Lion!' to cheer their men: on the other, they cried as loudly, 'Ghent, Ghent!' There was a moment when the earl was in danger of loſing all; and, if he had then given way, they would all have been ſlain and defeated beyond a remedy: for Peter du Bois, with full ſix thouſand men, was in the plain, and clearly ſaw the combat, but he could not give any aſſiſtance to his townſmen for the extenſive marſhes which were between him and the armies: but, had the earl loſt the day, or his men fled through panic, he knew well that Peter du Bois would have fallen upon them, and none would have eſcaped death, not even himſelf; which would have been ſuch a loſs as Flanders never would have recovered.

Raſſe de Harzelle and John de Launoy had not long the advantage in this combat, for the earl had a number of valiant knights, beſides the men from Ypres, Courtray, Oudenarde, Damme, Sluys, the Franc and Bruges, who, when aſſembled together, amounted

amounted to near twenty thouſand men, being four times the number of their enemies. The Ghent men, unable to withſtand them, were thrown into diſorder, and retreated into the town. Upon this, the knights and ſquires advanced, and, breaking their ranks, put them in confuſion, and killed them in heaps. The men of Ghent retired towards the church of Nevele, which was ſtrong; and, having collected themſelves there, a hard battle enſued, and great ſlaughter was made of them. John de Launoy, like one diſtracted, ruſhed into the church, and poſted himſelf, and as many men as he could, in the large tower of the ſteeple. Raſſe de Harzelle remained behind, and, with his men, performed many valorous deeds at the door of the church; but at laſt he was overpowered, and pierced with a ſpear, which inſtantly killed him.

Thus ended Raſſe de Harzelle, who had been a great commander of the Ghent men againſt the earl: he was much beloved by his townſmen for his good ſenſe and proweſs; but this was his recompenſe at laſt for all his valour.

When the earl of Flanders arrived at the ſquare before the church, and ſaw that the Ghent men had retreated into it, he ordered the church to be ſet on fire: his order was obeyed, and a fire was kindled with great quantities of ſtraw and faggots, which they placed all round the church. The flames ſoon aſcended to the roof, when the Ghent men periſhed miſerably; for they were ſure of being burnt if they ſtaid in the church, and if they

they ſallied out they were ſlain and caſt back into the fire.

John de Launoy, who was in the ſteeple, perceiving himſelf at the point of death, and that he muſt ſoon be burnt, for the ſteeple was beginning to take fire, cried out to thoſe below, 'Ranſom, ranſom!' and offered his coat, which was full of florins; but they laughed at and mocked him, ſaying,—'John, come and ſpeak to us through theſe windows and we will receive you. Make a handſome leap, John, ſuch as you have forced our friends to take this year: you muſt make this leap.' John de Launoy, finding his ſituation deſperate, and the fire ſo faſt approaching that he muſt be burnt, grew enraged, and preferred being ſlain to being burnt. Both happened to him; for he leaped out of the windows in the midſt of his enemies, who received him on their ſpears; and, after hacking him to pieces, he was flung into the flames. Thus finiſhed John de Launoy.

CHAP. LII.

PETER DU BOIS WITH THE REMAINDER OF HIS ARMY RETIRE TO GHENT.—AFTER HAVING BEEN IN DANGER OF HIS LIFE, HE BESIEGES COURTRAY.

OF the ſix thouſand men, of which the army at leaſt conſiſted, that Raſſe de Harzelle and John de Launoy had brought from Ghent or that neighbourhood, or who were ſerving the men of Ghent for pay and had been marched thither, there did not eſcape more than three hundred: the reſt were ſlain in the field or in the town, or had been burnt in the church. Peter du Bois, notwithſtanding he had a fine army, could not give them the ſmalleſt aſſiſtance, on account of the marſhes and ſtagnant waters which were between him and the earl's army.

He marched away with his men drawn up in order of battle, ſaying to them,—'Come, let us proceed ſlowly towards Ghent. Raſſe de Harzelle and John de Launoy have had very bad ſucceſs: they are defeated. I know not what may happen to us, if we ſhould be purſued, and attacked by the earl's army: let us keep in a body and combat boldly, as good men ſhould do when they fight for

their rights.' Thoſe who heard him anſwered, 'We will do ſo.' They then departed, taking the road towards Ghent, in a cloſe well formed battalion.

Some of the runaways who had eſcaped from the battle of Nevele returned to Ghent, which they entered quite frightened, like defeated men, and related their diſcomfiture, telling how Raſſe de Harzelle and John de Launoy had been ſlain and their army loſt. The citizens were much dejected at this ill news, and ſorry for the loſs of Raſſe, for they had found him a good captain and true to their intereſts: he was much beloved, and great confidence was placed in him, becauſe he was of a noble family, and had ſerved them faithfully for their money.

They aſked the runaways,—'Tell us where was Peter du Bois all the time of the combat?' They who had neither ſeen nor heard any intelligence of him replied, 'We have not ſeen him, nor do we know any thing about him.' Upon this, ſeveral be began to murmur, ſaying, that Peter du Bois had behaved very ill, for not having been preſent at this battle, he who had ſix thouſand men under his command completely armed.

Thoſe who governed Ghent therefore reſolved, as ſoon as Peter du Bois ſhould return, to kill him, and then make peace with the earl their lord, throwing themſelves on his mercy. I believe, that if they had done ſo, they would have acted well, and peace would eaſily have been made. But they changed their reſolution, for which afterwards

they

they paid ſeverely, as did the whole country of Flanders.

Affairs at that time were not ſo bad as they afterwards became, nor the great diſtreſs of Flanders at its height, as I ſhall hereafter relate.

After the defeat of Raſſe de Harzelle and John du Launoy, the earl of Flanders was informed, that Peter du Bois with an army of Ghent men were in the field, and on their march to that city. The earl halted, and called a council, in which he demanded from his knights whether he ſhould not purſue them and offer battle: they replied, that he had done enough that day; that his men were tired, and that it was proper they ſhould have ſome reſt; but that he would do well to ſend off five or ſix hundred men at arms, to obſerve their motions, for they might perhaps fix their quarters in ſuch a ſituation that they could come up with them at their diſlodging. The earl approved of this advice, and followed it: thoſe who were to be of this detachment were directly ordered out, and the lord d'Anghien was appointed to the command.

About five hundred lances being mounted, they marched off from Nevele, and followed bye-roads, in order to come up with the Ghent men: they proceeded ſo far that they at laſt ſaw them deſcend a ſmall hill: they were in a compact body, and in good order, marching at a good pace toward Ghent.

The lord d'Anghien and his detachment followed them ſome time on their flank. Peter du

Bois and his men ſaw them plainly, though they made not any appearance of being diſcompoſed by it. Peter du Bois ſaid,—'Let us continue our road with a good ſtep, without breaking our ranks; if they attack us, we will receive them, but I do not believe they have any ſuch intentions.'

Thus each party marched on, without doing any thing, as far as Ghent, when the lord d'Anghien returned to the earl, and Peter du Bois with his men entered the town. Peter du Bois was very badly received, and on the point of being killed, for not having exerted himſelf to aſſiſt Raſſe de Harzelle. Peter exculpated himſelf, ſaying truly, 'that he had ſent orders to Raſſe not to engage with the earl on any account, without being joined by him, for that the earl was in too great force; but that Raſſe had done quite the contrary: that if bad ſucceſs had attended him, he could not by any means be blamed: that he was as much grieved for the death of Raſſe as any one, for the town of Ghent had loſt a valiant man and good captain. It will therefore be neceſſary for you to chooſe another, one who has a good reputation and will be feared; who is bold, wiſe and prudent; or otherwiſe put yourſelves under the obedience of the earl, who will deſtroy us all, by wickedly and cruelly putting us to a ſhameful death. Now, conſider what you will do: either preſevere in what you have begun and carried on for ſo long a time, or throw yourſelves on the mercy of my lord the earl of Flanders.'

None made any anſwer to this ſpeech of Peter du

du Bois; but, with regard to the event of the battle of Nevele and the death of Raſſe, he was acquitted. He was, however, much diſſatisfied that no one replied to his ſpeech; particularly with ſome of the principal and richeſt citizens of Ghent then preſent, ſuch as ſir Guiſebert Grote and ſir Simon Bete. He at the time did not ſhew his reſentment; but in the courſe of the year, they ſeverely experienced its effects, as you will hear related.

The lord d'Anghien, the lord de Montigny and the Haze de Flanders, returned with their men to the earl, and related all they had ſeen. The earl ſet off from Nevele, and went to Bruges: he diſmiſſed his army to their different towns, and ſent thoſe of the Franc, with the lord d'Anghien and the banners, to Oudenarde.

The men of Ghent, on hearing that the earl had diſbanded his army and retired to Bruges, began to be in motion, by the inſtigation of Peter du Bois, who ſaid to them; 'Come, let us take the field, and not be cool in carrying on this war, but ſhew we are men of courage and enterprize.' Upwards of fifteen thouſand marched out of Ghent, and came before Courtray, to which they laid ſiege during the time of the feaſt and proceſſion at Bruges in the year 1381. They remained there for ten days, and burnt the ſuburbs of Courtray, with all the ſurrounding country. When the earl heard of this he remanded all his gentlemen, and the garriſons and commonalty of Ypres and the Franc, and marched from Bruges with upwards of

twenty-five thouſand men, taking the road to Courtray, with intentions of combating the Ghent army and raiſing the ſiege.

Peter du Bois, on receiving intelligence of the earl's march and ſtrength, thought it beſt not to continue the ſiege: he decamped, and went to Deynſe and Nevele, where his army quartered themſelves, giving out they would there wait for the earl: at the ſame time, they ſignified their ſituation to their townſmen, who ordered out the reſerve, that they might have a ſuperior force of men at arms. Fifteen thouſand more men therefore marched from Ghent to their army quartered at Deynſe and Nevele, where they encamped in the plain.

When the earl arrived at Harlebecque, near Courtray, he heard the Ghent men had retreated towards Ghent, and were quartered at Deynſe and Nevele. He did not think proper to purſue them at that time, but diſmiſſed great part of his army at Courtray, and ſent the lord d'Anghien and the Hainaulters, with his baſtard ſon the Haze, to Oudenarde in garriſon.

CHAP. LIII.

ARNOUL LE CLERC, CAPTAIN OF SOME TROOPS OF WHITE HOODS, DEFEATS SEVERAL OF THE EARL OF FLANDERS' NOBILITY.—HE HIMSELF IS AFTERWARDS DEFEATED AND SLAIN.

WHEN Peter du Bois and the Ghent army found that it was not the earl's intention to advance againſt them, they departed from Deynſe and Nevele, and took a roundabout road towards Oudenarde, on their return to Ghent. The day they paſſed Oudenarde, they detached a body from the army, under the command of Arnoul le Clerc, who advanced as far as the barriers of the town to ſkirmiſh. The knights and ſquires within could not reſiſt combating with them, ſo that many were ſlain and wounded on both ſides. But thoſe from Ghent did not continue the ſkirmiſh long: they returned to Ghent with their men, when each retired to his own houſe.

Three days after, Arnoul le Clerc marched to Gavre with about twelve hundred white hoods; and the caſtle and caſtlewick were garriſoned, to keep in check thoſe in Oudenarde. Arnoul le Clerc had not been there long before he was informed that ſome knights and ſquires had ſallied out of Oude-

narde in ſearch of adventures, namely, the lord de Cornais, the lord de Remſelles, ſir John de Villaines, the lord d'Anghien, le Gallois da Mamines, the baſtard de Cornais and ſir Blanchard de Calemie. He therefore formed an ambuſcade, and as theſe knights were on their return to Oudenarde, he fell upon them, when ſeveral were ſlain, for mercy was ſhewn to none. The horſes of the knights were brought very opportunely, when they made the beſt of their way to Oudenarde: on their arrival at the barriers, they diſmounted and put themſelves in a poſture of defence, waiting for their men and ſervants; but, before they could re-enter the town, they had left upwards of ſixty dead on the field.

Arnoul le Clerc, having performed this enterprize, marched that day to a monaſtery near Berchem: he found that Pierre d'Eſtonnehoux and Gallois de Mamines, with about a hundred of their companions, had retreated into the town of Berchem: he therefore immediately attacked the monaſtery whither they had retired. Gallois de Mamines with difficulty eſcaped from the back part of it, and having entered a boat, came by night to Oudenarde, when he related to the lord d'Anghien, the lord de Montigny, ſir Daniel de Halluyn and the other knights who were there, how Arnoul le Clerc, with the white hoods, had forced the monaſtery of Berchem, and ſlain their companions; that he thought Pierre d'Eſtonnehoux was killed; as indeed he was, for Arnoul le Clerc and his men had made him leap out of a window, when he was received

received on the points of their ſpears and ſlain, which was a great loſs.

The knights in Oudernarde, on hearing that Arnoul le Clerc with about twelve hundred white hoods were quartered in Berchem; that their companions were ſlain and the monaſtery taken; were very indignant, and determined to ſend off in the night ſpies to obſerve whither they would march on the morrow. The ſpies reported, that the white hoods had fixed on Berchem for their quarters, which much pleaſed theſe noblemen.

The lords d'Anghien, de Montigny, de Breſueil, ſir Michael de la Hamarde, with upwards of ſix hundred knights and ſquires from Hainault, immediately armed themſelves; as did a like number from Flanders. Three hundred ſpears were in Oudenarde, with upwards of one thouſand croſs-bows and ſtout varlets. They marched to Berchem, and, when near that place, they ſent forward ſir Oliver de Chem, with full one hundred lances, to begin the attack, and to draw Arnoul le Clerc out of the monaſtery, as well as to give time for the croſs-bows and ſtout varlets, who were on foot, to come up and be properly arranged.

Sir Daniel and ſir Peter de Diſquemac and the Haze de Flanders, ſpurring their horſes, entered the ſpace before the monaſtery full gallop, crying out, 'Flanders for the Lion! Flanders for the Baſtard!' The Ghent men, not ſuſpecting an ambuſcade, for it was early morn, were not dreſſed, ſo that before Arnoul le Clerc could collect his men, the lord d'Anghien, the lord Lens, the lord

de

de Breſueil, the lord de Cornais, the lord de Montigny, entered the back part of the town, with the army, crying out, 'D'Anghien for the lord!' and attacked the Ghent white hoods with ſo much vigour that they could not withſtand them, but, breaking their ranks, were thrown into diſorder; and, of the twelve hundred, eleven hundred were ſlain in the monaſtery, in the town and fields. Arnoul le Clerc was alſo killed, as he was running away, by two pikes being thruſt through him, which faſtened him to a hedge.'

After this defeat, the lord d'Anghien with the other knights returned to Oudenarde, eſteeming this enterpriſe a deed of great proweſs. The news of it greatly pleaſed the earl of Flanders, who told the lord d'Anghien that he was a handſome and good child, and in time would be a moſt valiant man. To ſay the truth, the lord d'Anghien was the glory of the earl of Flanders, who at that time reſided at Bruges, and who did not call him couſin, but fair ſon.

CHAP.

CHAP. LIV.

DURING THIS WAR, THE RICH CITIZENS OF GHENT ARE SUBJUGATED BY THEIR SOLDIERS. —PHILIP VON ARTAVELD IS MADE GOVERNOR OF GHENT.

WHEN the news was carried to Ghent that Arnoul le Clerc was ſlain, and his men defeated, many began to take alarm, and to ſay among themſelves, 'Our affairs go on very badly: by degrees, they will kill all our captains and men: we have done ill to make this war upon the earl our lord, for by little and little he will deſtroy us. The hatreds of Gilbert Matthew and John Lyon are now falling upon us, and we have too long followed the opinions of John Lyon and Peter du Bois: they have driven us into this war, and brought on us the hatred of our lord to ſuch a degree that we ſhall never be admitted to mercy, nor obtain a peace. It will be better that twenty or thirty ſhould ſuffer than a whole city.'

This was the converſation of ſeveral when together in private, from their dread of the ill-intentioned who were of another way of thinking, and were daily adding to their power, though at the beginning they were but poor workmen ſcarcely worth a groat. They had now plenty of gold and ſilver;

ſilver; for, when in want, they complained to their leaders, who willingly liſtened to them, and gave them advice by pointing out to them the richeſt men in the town and ſaying,—'Go to ſuch and ſuch perſons, and tell them we want to ſpeak to them.' They directly went, and thoſe they ſought were afraid to refuſe following them. On their arrival, they were told the good town of Ghent was in want of money to pay their ſoldiers, who were aiding to guard and preſerve their rights and franchiſes, and that it was neceſſary the workmen ſhould live.

They raiſed inſtantly among themſelves the ſum demanded; for, had they refuſed, they would have been put to death, on pretence of being traitors to the good town of Ghent, and indifferent to its honour or profit.

Thus did theſe wicked people become maſters of the town, and continued ſo as long as the war laſted againſt their lord. In truth, if the rich men and nobility of the town were beaten by ſuch rods, one cannot pity, nor any way excuſe them, for they were the primary cauſe of all this miſchief. When the earl of Flanders ſent thither his bailiff to do juſtice on ſome wicked perſons, could they not have remained ſteady and have aſſiſted him in this act, ſeeing the rebels were then in very ſmall numbers? But it appeared they were quite indifferent whether the affair turned out well or ill, or if they had war or peace. They muſt have been ſenſible, that if they made war on their lord, the ill-intentioned would be their maſters and lords of the town, and that they could not turn them out when they pleaſed.

pleaſed. It would happen to them as to John de la Faucilſe, who, by diſſembling and quitting the town of Ghent to live in Hainault, imagined he ſhould be clear of all the wars in Flanders, as well as of thoſe againſt his lord by the town of Ghent, of which he was a native, and that nothing would be required from him: but in this he was miſtaken, ſo that it cauſed his death; which was a pity, for John de la Faucille was in his time a wiſe and able man. But in thoſe days none could trim between the lords and the townſmen, for they were too clear ſighted; and though he knew how to adviſe others very well, yet in regard to himſelf he managed things badly.

I do not know, for a truth, if he were guilty of all the charges on which he was examined by ſir Simon Rain in the caſtle of Lille, but his judges, with his adverſe fortune, turned againſt him, ſo that he died: and thus it happened to all the leaders in Ghent, and thoſe who encouraged them in their rebellion againſt their lord. Many others of Ghent periſhed, who I hope were blameleſs.

When Peter du Bois ſaw Ghent thus weakened in her captains and ſoldiers, and deſerted by her allies; that the principal inhabitants began to tire; he ſuſpected they would readily give up the war, but that, whatever peace or treaty they ſhould enter into with the earl, there would not be any poſſibility for him to ſave his life. He therefore called to his recollection John Lyon, who had been his maſter, and with what art he had worked: he ſaw plainly he could not do every thing himſelf, not having

ſufficient

ſufficient weight nor knowledge to govern the town; neither did he wiſh for the principal command, being ſolely deſirous of leading every mad enterprize: he, in conſequence, turned his thoughts to a man, of whom the city of Ghent had not any ſuſpicions, one of ſufficient prudence, though his abilities were unknown, for until that day they had not paid any attention to him: his name was Philip von Artaveld, ſon of Jacob von Artaveld, who had ruled over all Flanders for ſeven years.

Peter du Bois had heard it related by his maſter, John Lyon, and the old people of Ghent, that the whole country was never ſo well governed, feared, loved and honoured as during the time of Jacob von Artaveld's reign, which laſted for ſeven years: the inhabitants added, that if Jacob von Artaveld were alive, things would not be in the ſtate they are now in: they ſhould have a peace according to their wiſhes, and the earl would too be happy to forgive them.

Theſe words made an impreſſion on Peter du Bois: he recollected that Jacob von Artaveld had left a ſon called Philip, a handſome and agreeable man, to whom the queen of England, when ſhe was at Ghent and during the time of the ſiege of Tournay, had ſtood godmother, and who, from reſpect to her, had been chriſtened Philip. Peter du Bois came one evening to Philip's houſe, who reſided with his mother, maintaining themſelves honourably on their rents. Peter, having arranged in his own mind what he ſhould ſay, thus opened the matter and the cauſe of his coming: 'If you will

will liſten to me, and follow my advice, I will make you the greateſt man in Flanders.' 'How will you do this?' replied Philip. 'I will tell you how,' ſaid Peter: 'you ſhall have the ſole government of Ghent: for we are at this moment in the utmoſt want of a leader of a good name and fair character: by this means we ſhall rouſe the men of Ghent through remembrance of your father's fame; for every one ſays that Flanders was never ſo flouriſhing, nor ſo much feared, as during his lifetime. I will eaſily place you, if you be willing, in his ſituation; and, when there, you will govern according to my advice until you ſhall find yourſelf maſter of the buſineſs, which you will ſoon acquire.'

Philip, who was arrived at manhood and naturally wiſhed to advance himſelf in honour and wealth more than he then poſſeſſed, replied,—'Peter, you offer me great things; and, if I be placed in the ſituation you ſay, I ſwear on my faith, that I will never act without your advice.'

Peter aſked,—'Can you be cruel and proud? for a great man among the commonalty, and in particular among ſuch as we ſhall have to do with, will not be thought any thing worth if he be not feared and dreaded, and at times renowned for his cruelty. It is thus the Flemings wiſh to be governed; and, among them, mens lives ſhould be no more valued, nor ſhould they have more pity ſhewn of them, than ſwallows or larks, which are caught in the proper ſeaſon for the table.'

'By my troth,' anſwered Philip, 'I know well how to act this part.' 'All then goes well,' ſaid Peter.

Peter. 'You are juſt ſuch a one as I want, and the chief I look for.' On ſaying this, he took leave and departed to his own houſe. Night paſſed, and day returned, when Peter du Bois went to a ſquare where there were upwards of four thouſand of his followers and others, aſſembled to hear the news, to diſcuſs how matters ought to be carried on, and who ſhould be governor of the town.

The lord de Harzelle was there, who chiefly conducted the affairs of Ghent, but he would not undertake to do any thing out of the town: ſome named him for governor: others were alſo nominated. Peter, who was liſtening attentively, having heard many names, raiſed his voice and ſaid; 'Gentlemen, I have paid every attention to all you have ſaid, and firmly believe you have been induced, through your love and affection for the honour and wealth of the town of Ghent, to propoſe ſuch who are worthy to have a ſhare in the government of this city; but I know one who in no way is thinking of it, and if he would undertake the government, there could not be any one found of greater abilities, nor of a more propitious name.' Peter du Bois was called upon to name him, which he did by ſaying, 'It was Philip von Artaveld, who was chriſtened at the font of St. Peter's in Ghent by that noble queen of England, Philippa, who was his godmother at the time when his father, Jacob von Artaveld, was at the ſiege of Tournay with the king of England, the duke of Brabant, the duke of Gueldres and the earl of Hainault; which Jacob von Artaveld, his father, governed

the

the town of Ghent and the country of Flanders better than has ever been done ſince, from all I hear from thoſe inhabitants who have it ſtrong in their memories: Flanders had been for ſome time loſt, if through his ſenſe and good fortune he had not regained it. 'Now, it behoves us to love the branches from ſuch a valiant man, in preference to any other perſon.' No ſooner had Peter du Bois done ſpeaking than the idea of Philip von Artaveld filled every one's mind, and encouraged them ſo much that they unanimouſly cried out; 'Let him be ſought for: we will not have any one but him for our governor.' 'No, no,' ſaid Peter du Bois: 'we will not ſend for him: it will be much better we go to his houſe, for we do not at preſent know how he will take it. We ought not by any means to ſuffer him to excuſe himſelf from accepting it.'

At theſe words, thoſe preſent took the road to Philip's houſe, followed by many others who had been informed of their intentions. When they arrived there, the lord de Harzelle, Peter du Bois, Peter la Nuitée, and about ten or twelve of the principal tradeſmen, addreſſed him, ſaying, 'that the good town of Ghent was in the greateſt danger for want of a chief, with whom alliances might be formed both at home and abroad, and that all ranks of people in Ghent had given him their voices and choſen him to be their ſovereign; for the good remembrance of his name, and the love they had borne to his father, made him more agreeable to them than any one elſe. For which reaſons they entreated him affectionately to take on him the go-

vernment of the town, with the management of their affairs both within and without, and they would ſwear to him obedience and loyalty as completely as to their lord. They likewiſe engaged to bring every one, how great ſoever he might be, under his obedience.'

Philip, after hearing every thing they had to ſay, made the following prudent reply: 'Gentlemen, you require great things from me; and I ſhould imagine you have not weighed the matter ſo maturely as it ought to have been, when you offer me the government of Ghent. You ſay, the affection your anceſtors had for my father has been your great inducement: when he had performed for them every ſervice in his power, they murdered him. If I ſhould accept the government in the manner you requeſt, and be afterwards murdered, I ſhall gain but a miſerable recompence.'

'Philip,' ſaid Peter du Bois, who caught at theſe words which ſeemed to make his choice doubtful, 'what has paſſed cannot now be amended: you will act from the advice of your council, and by thus continuing you will ever be ſo well adviſed that all mankind ſhall praiſe you.'

Philip anſwered; 'I ſhould never wiſh to act otherwiſe.'

They then elected him; and, conducting him to the market-place, he was there ſworn into office. The mayors, ſheriffs and rulers of companies were alſo ſworn to obey him.

In this manner was Philip von Artaveld made ſovereign of Ghent. He acqired great popularity

at

at the commencement; for he ſpoke to every one who had any buſineſs with him politely and prudently, ſo that he was beloved by all. He gave a part of the revenues which the earl of Flanders had in Ghent as his inheritance to the lord de Harzelle, out of affection to him, and to enable him the better to ſupport his rank; for he had loſt every thing he poſſeſſed without the walls of the town.

We will now for a time leave theſe affairs of Flanders, and ſpeak of thoſe of England and Portugal.

CHAP. LV.

A WAR BETWEEN THE KINGS OF CASTILLE AND PORTUGAL.

YOU have before heard related the death of king Henry of Caſtille, and that his eldeſt ſon, don John, was crowned in his ſtead. His queen alſo, who was daughter to king Peter of Arragon, was crowned with him. A war broke out between king Ferdinand of Portugal and the king of Caſtille on certain diſputes between them; but principally on account of the two daughters of Peter king of Caſtille, who were married in England; the eldeſt, Conſtance, to the duke of Lancaſter, and Iſabella to the earl of Cambridge. The king of Portugal

declared, that it was unjuſt and illegal in the king of Caſtille to diſinherit, without cauſe, his two couſins; and that it was not becoming that two noble ladies of ſuch high birth ſhould be diſinherited from their rights: it was alſo improper that this affair ſhould become old and forgotten, ſo that theſe ladies would never be able to regain their poſſeſſions: that for him, who was one of the neareſt relations they had, he would never conſent to it, both for the love of God and his deſire to maintain juſtice, to which every good Chriſtian ſhould incline.

He ſent therefore his defiance to the king of Caſtille, whom all Spain had crowned; and the king of Portugal made war upon him for the reaſons above mentioned. Don John defended himſelf valiantly, and ordered to the frontiers and to his garriſons numbers of men at arms, to oppoſe his enemies, ſo that he loſt nothing at the breaking out of hoſtilities. He had with him ſome of the ableſt and moſt prudent of French chivalry, who aſſiſted him greatly by their arms and advice; ſuch as the bègue de Villaines, ſir Peter his ſon, ſir John de Bergettes, ſir William de Lignac, ſir Walter de Puiſſac, the lord de la Tande, ſir John and ſir Triſtram de Roye, and many more, who had gone to Spain on the departure of the earl of Buckingham from Brittany; for the king of France, who had great connections and of a long ſtanding with the king of Caſtille, had ſent them thither.

The king of Portugal, on finding this, thought it adviſable to ſend ambaſſadors to England to the king

king and his uncles, to requeſt ſuccours from them, that he might be able to carry on a ſucceſsful war againſt the king of Caſtille. He called to him one of his knights, a valiant and prudent man, as well as a great lord, called John Ferrande, and told him his intentions in theſe words: 'John, you will carry theſe credential letters to England. I cannot ſend thither a more able ambaſſador than yourſelf, nor one who is better informed of all my affairs: you will therefore commend me to the king, on preſenting theſe letters, and let him know that I am ſupporting the rights of my couſins, his aunts, for their inheritance of Caſtille and Spain; and that I have already waged war againſt him, who, through the influence of France, has taken poſſeſſion of it; but that I am not ſufficiently ſtrong in myſelf, nor have I reſources to oppoſe him, nor to conquer ſuch heritages as Caſtille, Galicia and Seville. For which reaſon, I entreat him to ſend me his fair uncle the duke of Lancaſter, with his wife and daughter, my couſins, and a number of men at arms and archers. On their arrival hither, we will carry on ſuch a war, if it ſhould pleaſe God, that we will recover their inheritances.'

'My lord,' replied the knight, 'with pleaſure will I carry your meſſage.' He was not long before he embarked on board a ſtrong veſſel fit for the voyage, and ſailed from the harbour of Liſbon; when, having favourable winds, he arrived at Plymouth the ſame day and ſame tide that the earl of Buckingham returned thither, with part of his fleet, from Brittany.

The Engliſh had unfortunately loſt at ſea three of their ſhips, full of men and ſtores; and had been ſo much ſeparated by contrary winds, that they arrived, not without great danger, in three different ports of England.

The earl of Buckingham was rejoiced at the arrival of the Portugueſe knight, whom he moſt graciouſly received. On his inquiring after news, he told him enough, as well of Spain as of Portugal.

They continued their journey together until they came to the good city of London, where the king was.

On the earl of Buckingham's arrival, the city of London entertained him magnificently. He went to Weſtminſter to wait on the king, who was there with his two uncles, the duke of Lancaſter and earl of Cambridge, and took the knight from Portugal with him, whom he preſented to the king and to his brothers.

When the king and the above-named lords were made acquainted with the ſubject of his coming, they ſeemed to be much pleaſed, and paid him great reſpect. He delivered his letters to the king, who read them in the preſence of his uncles; for you muſt know the king did nothing without the advice of theſe uncles, being at that time very young.

The knight was queſtioned, notwithſtanding the letters he had brought with him, on the ſubject of his coming from Portugal: his anſwers were prudent and proper, according to the propoſitions which have been mentioned before. When the lords had fully heard all he had to ſay, they ſaid,

—'Many

—'Many thanks to our fair couſin the king of Portugal, who, to ſerve us, has made war on our adverſary. What he requires is but reaſonable, and he ſhall be ſpeedily ſuccoured. The king will conſider in what manner he ſhall arrange this buſineſs.' No further converſation paſſed. The foreign knight, having brought ſuch agreeable tidings to the duke of Lancaſter and earl of Cambridge, was much feaſted, and dined with the king. He remained about fifteen days, and until a week before the feaſt of St. George, with the king and his uncles. Sir Robert de Namur was alſo there, who had come to do homage to the king for what he poſſeſſed in England. The parliament was alſo ſummoned to meet at Weſtminſter, as well on account of this embaſſy from Portugal as upon the affairs of Scotland, the truce between the two countries ending the firſt of June.

The prelates and barons of England held many councils to conſider this buſineſs: they were not for ſending the duke of Lancaſter to Portugal, ſome ſaying it was a long voyage for him, and that they might repent of his going, for the Scots were making great preparations to invade England. It was at laſt determined that the duke of Lancaſter, who was well acquainted with Scotland and its inhabitants, ſhould go to the borders, and learn what were the intentions of the Scots; for of all the barons of England he knew beſt how to conduct a treaty, and the Scots would do more for him than for any other perſon. They likewiſe reſolved that the earl

of Cambridge ſhould embark of Portugal with five hundred ſpears and as many archers; and if the duke of Lancaſter could manage the Scots, and, without diſhonouring England, conclude a truce for three years, he might go likewiſe, if the king approved of it in council, about Auguſt or September, to Portugal to reinforce the army of his brother. There was another reaſon why the duke of Lancaſter ought to remain in England: the king had ſent ambaſſadors, with the duke of Saxony and the archbiſhop of Ravenna, to the emperor of Germany, to demand his ſiſter in marriage and to obtain his anſwer; for there had been great negotiations on this ſubject for upwards of a year. The biſhop of St. David's and ſir Simon Burley were the ambaſſadors, on the part of England, to aſſiſt and bring it to a concluſion.

The king and his lords agreed to this determination, when the parliament broke up. Liſts were made out of thoſe barons and knights who were to accompany the earl of Cambridge to Portugal.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVI.

THE EARL OF CAMBRIDGE SAILS FOR PORTUGAL.—THE DUKE OF LANCASTER GOES TO THE BORDERS OF SCOTLAND, TO MAKE A TRUCE WITH THE SCOTS.

THE duke of Lancaſter, having made his preparations, left the king and his brothers. On taking leave of the earl of Cambridge, he ſwore to him, by his faith, that on his return from Scotland, he would ſpeedily follow him to Portugal, if no hindrance which he could not then foreſee happened in England to prevent him. On this, the duke departed, taking the road to Scotland, and attended only by thoſe of his houſehold.

In this parliament, the earl of Northumberland was appointed lieutenant of all Northumberland, the biſhoprick of Durham, and as much of Wales as to the banks of the Severn: he therefore left London for thoſe parts, but it was about fifteen days after the departure of the duke of Lancaſter.

The earl of Cambridge took leave of the king and his brother the earl of Buckingham, to complete the forces for the expedition he had undertaken to command. He made his rendezvous at Plymouth, where he was the firſt who arrived, bringing with him his lady Iſabella and his ſon John, whom he intended carrying with him to Portugal.

The

The earl of Cambridge was accompanied by many noblemen, ſuch as ſir Matthew Gournay conſtable of the army, the canon de Robeſart, ſir John Newcaſtle, ſir William Beauchamp marſhal of the army, the ſouldich de l'Eſtrade, the lord Botreaux, the lord de Charlton, ſir William Helmon, ſir Thomas Symon, ſir Nicholas Windſor, ſir John Carteret and ſeveral others. There were alſo men at arms to the amount of five hundred, and as many archers.

Theſe lords and their men came to Plymouth, where they quartered themſelves and in the adjoining villages. They loaded their veſſels by little and little; but no horſes were to be embarked, as the voyage was too long from England to Liſbon. The Portugueſe knight was with them, intending to accompany them to his country. They remained upwards of three weeks on the coaſt, getting ready their proviſion and ſtores, and waiting for favourable weather.

The duke of Lancaſter, continued his journey towards Scotland until he came to Berwick, which is the laſt town in that part of England. When arrived there, he halted, and ſent a meſſage to Scotland to acquaint the barons he was come thither to ride the borders, as had always been cuſtomary; and, if they were deſirous of doing the ſame firſt, they had beſt to inform him of it, otherwiſe he well knew what he was to do.

The duke's herald rode to Edinburgh, where king Robert of Scotland, the earl of Douglas, the earl of Mar, the earl of Moray and all the principal barons

barons of Scotland were aſſembled. They had heard the duke of Lancaſter was come to treat with them, and had thus aſſembled in the chief town of Scotland, where the herald met them.

The herald punctually executed his meſſage. He was favourably liſtened to, and had a friendly anſwer from the Scots barons, who ſaid, they would willingly hear what the duke had to propoſe. The herald brought back with him paſſports for the duke and his people, to laſt as long as they ſhould remain on the borders and during the parleys. The herald, having received theſe aſſurances, came back to Berwick and related what he had done.

Upon this, the duke departed from Berwick, leaving all his ſtores in that town, and took the road to Roxburgh, where he lay. On the morrow, he was lodged in the abbey of Melroſe on the Tweed, which divides the two kingdoms of Scotland and England. The duke and his attendants remained there until the Scots were come to Lambir-law, three ſhort leagues off. On their arrival, they ſignified it to the duke, when immediately negotiations were begun between the Scots and Engliſh, and which laſted for upwards of fifteen days.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVII.

THE POPULACE OF ENGLAND REBEL AGAINST THE NOBILITY.

WHILE theſe conferences were going forward, there happened in England great commotions among the lower ranks of the people, by which England was near ruined without reſource. Never was a country in ſuch jeopardy as this was at that period, and all through the too great comfort of the commonalty. Rebellion was ſtirred up, as it was formerly done in France by the Jacques Bons-hommes, who did much evil, and ſore troubled the kingdom of France.

It is marvellous from what a trifle this peſtilence raged in England. In order that it may ſerve as an example to mankind, I will ſpeak of all that was done, from the information I had at the time on the ſubject.

It is cuſtomary in England, as well as in ſeveral other countries, for the nobility to have great privileges over the commonalty, whom they keep in bondage; that is to ſay, there are bound by law and cuſtom to plow the lands of gentlemen, to harveſt the grain, to carry it home to the barn, to thraſh and winnow it: they are alſo bound to harveſt the hay and carry it home. All theſe ſervices

vices they are obliged to perform for their lords, and many more in England than in other countries. The prelates and gentlemen are thus ſerved. In the counties of Kent, Eſſex, Suſſex and Bedford, theſe ſervices are more oppreſſive than in all the reſt of the kingdom.

The evil-diſpoſed in theſe diſtricts began to riſe, ſaying, they were too ſeverely oppreſſed; that at the beginning of the world there were no ſlaves, and that no one ought to be treated as ſuch, unleſs he had committed treaſon againſt his lord, as Lucifer had done againſt GOD: but they had done no ſuch thing, for they were neither angels nor ſpirits, but men formed after the ſame likeneſs with their lords, who treated them as beaſts. This they would not longer bear, but had determined to be free, and if they laboured or did any other works for their lords, they would be paid for it.

A crazy prieſt in the county of Kent, called John Ball, who, for his abſurd preaching, had been thrice confined in the priſon of the archbiſhop of Canterbury, was greatly inſtrumental in inflaming them with thoſe ideas. He was accuſtomed, every Sunday after maſs, as the people were coming out of the church, to preach to them in the market place and aſſemble a crowd around him; to whom he would ſay,—'My good friends, things cannot go on well in England, nor ever will until every thing ſhall be in common; when there ſhall neither be vaſſal nor lord, and all diſtinctions levelled; when the lords ſhall be no more maſters than ourſelves. How ill have they uſed us? and for what reaſon do they thus

thus hold us in bondage? Are we not all deſcended from the ſame parents, Adam and Eve? and what can they ſhew, or what reaſons give, why they ſhould be more the maſters than ourſelves? except, perhaps, in making us labour and work, for them to ſpend. They are clothed in velvets and rich ſtuffs, ornamented with ermine and other furs, while we are forced to wear poor cloth. They have wines, ſpices, and fine bread, when we have only rye and the refuſe of the ſtraw; and, if we drink, it muſt be water. They have handſome ſeats and manors, when we muſt brave the wind and rain in our labours in the field; but it is from our labour they have wherewith to ſupport their pomp. We are called ſlaves; and, if we do not perform our ſervices, we are beaten, and we have not any ſovereign to whom we can complain, or who wiſhes to hear us and do us juſtice. Let us go to the king, who is young, and remonſtrate with him on our ſervitude, telling him we muſt have it otherwiſe, or that we ſhall find a remedy for it ourſelves. If we wait on him in a body, all thoſe who come under the appellation of ſlaves, or are held in bondage, will follow us, in the hopes of being free. When the king ſhall ſee us, we ſhall obtain a favourable anſwer, or we muſt then ſeek ourſelves to amend our condition.'

With ſuch words as theſe did John Ball harangue the people, at his village, every Sunday after maſs, for which he was much beloved by them. Some who wiſhed no good declared it was very true, and murmuring to each other, as they were going to

the

the fields, on the road from one village to another, or at their different houſes, ſaid, 'John Ball preaches ſuch and ſuch things, and he ſpeaks truth.'

The archbiſhop of Canterbury, on being informed of this, had John Ball arreſted, and impriſoned for two or three months by way of puniſhment; but it would have been better if he had been confined during his life, or been put to death, than to have been ſuffered thus to act. The archbiſhop ſet him at liberty, for he could not for conſcience ſake have put him to death. The moment John Ball was out of priſon, he returned to his former errors.

Numbers in the city of London having heard of his preaching, being envious of the rich men and nobility, began to ſay among themſelves, that the kingdom was too badly governed, and the nobility had ſeized on all the gold and ſilver coin. Theſe wicked Londoners, therefore, began to aſſemble and to rebel: they ſent to tell thoſe in the adjoining counties, they might come boldly to London, and bring their companions with them, for they would find the town open to them, and the commonalty in the ſame way of thinking; that they would preſs the king ſo much, there ſhould no longer be a ſlave in England.

Theſe promiſes ſtirred up thoſe in the counties of Kent, Eſſex, Suſſex and Bedford, and the adjoining country, ſo that they marched towards London; and, when they arrived near, they were upwards of ſixty thouſand. They had a leader called

called Wat Tyler, and with him were Jack Straw and John Ball: theſe three were their commanders, but the principal was Wat Tyler. This Wat had been a tiler of houſes, a bad man, and a great enemy to the nobility. When theſe wicked people firſt began to riſe, all London, except their friends, were very much frightened. The mayor and rich citizens aſſembled in council, on hearing they were coming to London, and debated whether they ſhould ſhut the gates and refuſe to admit them; but, having well conſidered, they determined not to do ſo, as they ſhould run a riſk of having the ſuburbs burnt.

The gates were therefore thrown open, when they entered in troops of one or two hundred, by twenties or thirties, according to the populouſneſs of the towns they came from; and as they came into London they lodged themſelves. But it is a truth, that full two-thirds of theſe people knew not what they wanted, nor what they ſought for: they followed one another like ſheep, or like to the ſhepherds of old, who ſaid they were going to conquer the holy land, and afterwards accompliſhed nothing. In ſuch manner did theſe poor fellows and vaſſals come to London from diſtances of a hundred and ſixty leagues, but the greater part from thoſe counties I have mentioned, and on their arrival they demanded to ſee the king.

The gentlemen of the country, the knights and ſquires, began to be alarmed when they ſaw the people thus riſe; and, if they were frightened, they had ſufficient reaſon, for leſs cauſes create

fear.

fear. They began to collect together as well as they could.

The ſame day that theſe wicked men of Kent were on their road towards London, the princeſs of Wales, mother to the king, was returning from a pilgrimage to Canterbury. She ran great riſks from them; for theſe ſcoundrels attacked her car, and cauſed much confuſion, which greatly frightened the good lady, leſt they ſhould do ſome violence to her or to her ladies. God, however, preſerved her from this, and ſhe came in one day from Canterbury to London, without venturing to make any ſtop by the way. Her ſon Richard was this day in the Tower of London: thither the princeſs came, and found the king attended by the earl of Saliſbury, the archbiſhop of Canterbury, ſir Robert de Namur, the lord de Gommegines, and ſeveral more, who had kept near his perſon from ſuſpicions of his ſubjects who were thus aſſembling, without knowing what they wanted. This rebellion was well known to be in agitation in the king's palace, before it broke out and the country people had left their homes; to which the king applied no remedy, to the great aſtoniſhment of every one.

In order that gentlemen and others may take example, and correct wicked rebels, I will moſt amply detail how this buſineſs was conducted.

CHAP. LVIII.

THE POPULACE OF ENGLAND COMMIT MANY CRUELTIES ON THOSE IN OFFICIAL SITUATIONS.—THEY SEND A KNIGHT AS AMBASSADOR TO THE KING.

ON Monday preceding the feaſt of the holy ſacrament, in the year 1381, did theſe people ſally forth from their homes, to come to London to remonſtrate with the king, that all might be made free, for they would not there ſhould be any ſlaves in England. At Canterbury, they met John Ball (who thought he ſhould find there the archbiſhop, but he was at London), Wat Tyler and Jack Straw. On their entrance into Canterbury, they were much feaſted by every one, for the inhabitants were of their way of thinking; and, having held a council, they reſolved to march to London, and alſo to ſend emiſſaries acroſs the Thames to Eſſex, Suffolk, Bedford, and other counties, to preſs the people to march to London on that ſide, and thus, as it were, to ſurround it, which the king would not be able to prevent. It was their intention that all the different parties ſhould be collected together on the feaſt of the holy ſacrament, or on the following day.

Thoſe who had come to Canterbury entered the church

church of St. Thomas, and did much damage: they pillaged the apartments of the archbiſhop, ſaying as they were carrying off different articles,—'This chancellor of England has had this piece of furniture very cheap: he muſt now give us an account of the revenues of England, and of the large ſums he has levied ſince the coronation of the king.' After they had defrauded the abbey of St. Vincent, they ſet off in the morning, and all the populace of Canterbury with them, taking the road towards Rocheſter. They collected the people from the villages to the right and left, and marched along like a tempeſt, deſtroying every houſe of an attorney or king's proctor, or that belonged to the archbiſhop, ſparing none.

On their arrival at Rocheſter, they were much feaſted, for the people were waiting for them, being of their party. They advanced to the caſtle, and ſeizing a knight called ſir John de Newtoun, who was conſtable of it and captain of the town*, they told him that he muſt accompany them as their commander in chief, and do whatever they ſhould wiſh. The knight endeavoured to excuſe himſelf, and offered good reaſons for it, if they had been liſtened to; but they ſaid to him, 'Sir John, if you will not act as we ſhall order, you are a dead man.' The knight ſeeing this outrageous mob ready to kill him, complied with their requeſt, and very unwillingly put himſelf at their head. They

* 'John de Newtoun was conſtable of this caſtle (Rocheſter) anno 2. king Richard.' *Haſted's Kent*, vol. ii. p. 13

had acted in a similar manner in the other counties of England, in Essex, Suffolk, Cambridge, Bedford, Stafford, Warwick and Lincoln, where they forced great lords and knights, such as the lord Manley, a great baron, sir Stephen Hales, sir Thomas Cossington, to lead and march with them. Now, observe how fortunately matters turned out, or had they succeeded in their intentions they would have destroyed the whole nobility of England: after this success, the people of other nations would have rebelled, taking example from those of Ghent and Flanders, who were in actual rebellion against their lord.

In this same year the Parisians acted a similar part, arming themselves with leaden maces. They were upwards of twenty thousand, as I shall relate when I come to that part of my history; but I will first go on with this rebellion in England.

When those who had lodged at Rochester had done all they wanted, they departed, and, crossing the river, came to Dartford, but always following their plan of destroying the houses of lawyers or proctors on the right and left of their road. In their way, they cut off several mens heads, and continued their march to Blackheath, where they fixed their quarters: they said they were armed for the king and commons of England.

When the citizens of London found they were quartered so near them, they closed the gates of London-bridge: guards were placed there by orders of sir William Walworth, mayor of London, and several rich citizens who were not of their party:

party: but there were in the city more than thirty thouſand who favoured them.

Thoſe who were at Blackheath had information of this: they ſent, therefore, their knight to ſpeak with the king, and to tell him, that what they were doing was for his ſervice, for the kingdom had been for ſeveral years wretchedly governed, to the great diſhonour of the realm and to the oppreſſion of the lower ranks of the people, by his uncles, by the clergy, and in particular by the archbiſhop of Canterbury, his chancellor, from whom they would have an account of his miniſtry.

The knight dared not ſay nor do any thing to the contrary, but, advancing to the Thames oppoſite the Tower, he took boat and croſſed over. While the king and thoſe with him in the Tower were in great ſuſpence, and anxious to receive ſome intelligence, the knight came on ſhore: way was made for him, and he was conducted to the king, who was in an apartment with the princeſs his mother. There were alſo with the king his two maternal brothers, the earl of Kent and ſir John Holland, the earls of Saliſbury, Warwick, Suffolk, the archbiſhop of Canterbury, the great prior of the Templars in England, ſir Robert de Namur, the lord de Vertain, the lord de Gommegines, ſir Henry de Sauſſelles, the mayor of London and ſeveral of the principal citizens.

Sir John Newtoun, who was well known to them all, for he was one of the king's officers, caſt himſelf on his knees and ſaid,—'My much re-

doubted lord, do not be diſpleaſed with me for the meſſage I am about to deliver to you; for, my dear lord, through force I am come hither.'

'By no means, ſir John, tell us what you are charged with: we hold you excuſed.' 'My very redoubted lord, the commons of your realm ſend me to you to entreat you would come and ſpeak with them on Blackheath. They wiſh to have no one but yourſelf; and you need not fear for your perſon, for they will not do you the leaſt harm: they always have reſpected and will reſpect you as their king; but they will tell you many things, which, they ſay, it is neceſſary you ſhould hear; with which, however, they have not empowered me to acquaint you. But, dear lord, have the goodneſs to give me ſuch an anſwer as may ſatisfy them, and that they may be convinced I have really been in your preſence; for they have my children as hoſtages for my return, whom they will aſſuredly put to death, if I do not go back.'

The king replied, 'You ſhall ſpeedily have an anſwer.' Upon this, he called a council to conſider what was to be done. The king was adviſed to ſay, that if on Thurſday they would come down to the river Thames, he would without fail ſpeak with them. Sir John Newtoun, on receiving this anſwer, was well ſatisfied therewith, and, taking leave of the king and barons, departed: having entered his boat, he recroſſed the Thames, and returned to Blackheath, where he had left upwards of ſixty thouſand men. He told them from the king,

king, that if they would ſend on the morrow morning their leaders to the Thames, the king would come and hear what they had to ſay.

This anſwer gave great pleaſure, and they were contented with it: they paſſed the night as well as they could; but you muſt know that one-fourth of them faſted for want of proviſion, as they had not brought any with them, at which they were much vexed, as may be ſuppoſed.

At this time, the earl of Buckingham was in Wales, where he poſſeſſed great eſtates in right of his wife, who was daughter of the earl of Hereford and Northampton; but the common report about London was, that he favoured theſe people: ſome aſſured it for a truth, as having ſeen him among them, becauſe there was one Thomas very much reſembling him, from the county of Cambridge.

As for the Engliſh barons who were at Plymouth making preparations for their voyage, they had heard of this rebellion, and that the people were riſing in all parts of the kingdom. Fearful leſt their voyage ſhould be prevented, or that the populace, as they had done at Southampton, Winchelſea and Arundel, ſhould attack them, they heaved their anchors, and with ſome difficulty left the harbour, for the wind was againſt them, and put to ſea, when they caſt anchor to wait for a wind.

The duke of Lancaſter was on the borders, between la Morlane*, Roxburgh and Melroſe, hold-

* La Morlane. Lambir-law.—*Macpherſon's Geog. Illuſt. of Scotland.*

ing conferences with the Scots: he had alſo received intelligence of this rebellion, and the danger his perſon was in, for he well knew he was unpopular with the common people of England. Notwithſtanding this, he managed his treaty very prudently with the Scots commiſſioners, the earl of Douglas, the earl of Moray, the earl of Sutherland, the earl of Mar and Thomas de Veſey. The Scotſmen who were conducting the treaty on the part of the king and the country knew alſo of the rebellion in England, and how the populace were riſing every where againſt the nobility. They ſaid, that England was ſhaken and in great danger of being ruined, for which in their treaties they bore the harder on the duke of Lancaſter and his council.

We will now return to the commonalty of England, and ſay how they continued in their rebellion.

CHAP.

CHAP. LIX.

THE COMMONALTY OF ENGLAND ENTER LONDON, WHERE THEY COMMIT MANY CRUELTIES AND OUTRAGES.—THEY PUT TO DEATH THE ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY AND SEVERAL OTHERS.

ON Corpus Chriſti day king Richard heard maſs, in the tower of London, with all his lords, and afterwards entered his barge, attended by the earls of Saliſbury, Warwick and Suffolk, with other knights. He rowed down the Thames towards Rotherhithe, a manor belonging to the crown, where were upwards of ten thouſand men, who had come from Blackheath to ſee the king and to ſpeak to him: when they perceived his barge approach, they ſet up ſuch ſhouts and cries as if all the devils in hell had been in their company. They had their knight, ſir John Newtoun, with them; for, in caſe the king had not come and they found he had made a jeſt of them, they would, as they had threatened, have cut him to pieces.

When the king and his lords ſaw this crowd of people, and the wildneſs of their manner, there was not one among them ſo bold and determined but felt alarmed: the king was adviſed by his barons

barons not to land, but to have his barge rowed up and down the river.

'What do ye wiſh for?' demanded the king: 'I am come hither to hear what you have to ſay.' Thoſe near him cried out with one voice,—'We wiſh thee to land, when we will remonſtrate with thee, and tell thee more at our eaſe what our wants are.' The earl of Saliſbury then replied for the king, and ſaid,—'Gentlemen, you are not properly dreſſed, nor in a fit condition for the king to talk with you.'

Nothing more was ſaid; for the king was deſired to return to the Tower of London, from whence he had ſet out. When the people ſaw they could obtain nothing more, they were inflamed with paſſion, and went back to Blackheath, where the main body was, to relate the anſwer they had received, and how the king was returned to the Tower. They all then cried out, 'Let us march inſtantly to London.' They immediately ſet off, and, in their road thither, they deſtroyed the houſes of lawyers, courtiers and monaſteries. Advancing into the ſuburbs of London, which were very handſome and extenſive, they pulled down many fine houſes: in particular, they demoliſhed the priſon of the king called the Marſhalſea, and ſet at liberty all thoſe confined within it. They did much damage to the ſuburbs, and menaced the Londoners at the entrance of the bridge for having ſhut the gates of it, ſaying, they would ſet fire to the ſuburbs, take the city by ſtorm, and afterwards burn and deſtroy it.

With

With reſpect to the common people of London, numbers were of their opinions, and, on aſſembling together, ſaid,—'Why will you refuſe admittance to theſe honeſt men? They are our friends, and what they are doing is for our good.' It was then found neceſſary to open the gates, when crowds ruſhed in, and ran to thoſe ſhops which ſeemed well ſtored with proviſion: if they ſought for meat or drink, it was placed before them, and nothing refuſed, but all manner of good cheer offered, in hopes of appeaſing them.

Their leaders, John Ball, Jack Straw and Wat Tyler, then marched through London, attended by more than twenty thouſand men, to the palace of the Savoy, which is a handſome building on the road to Weſtminſter, ſituated on the banks of the Thames, belonging to the duke of Lancaſter: they immediately killed the porters, preſſed into the houſe and ſet it on fire. Not content with committing this outrage, they went to the houſe of the knights-hoſpitalers of Rhodes, dedicated to St. John of Mount Carmel, which they burnt, together with their hoſpital and church. They afterwards paraded the ſtreets, and killed every Fleming they could find, whether in houſe, church or hoſpital: not one eſcaped death. They broke open ſeveral houſes of the Lombards, taking whatever money they could lay their hands on, none daring to oppoſe them. They murdered a rich citizen called Richard Lyon, to whom Wat Tyler had been formerly ſervant in France; but, having once beaten this varlet, he had not forgotten it,

and,

and, having carried his men to his houſe, ordered his head to be cut off, placed upon a pike, and carried through the ſtreets of London. Thus did theſe wicked people act like madmen; and, on this Thurſday, they did much miſchief to the city of London.

Towards evening, they fixed their quarters in a ſquare called St. Catherines, before the Tower, declaring they would not depart thence until they ſhould obtain from the king every thing they wanted, and have all their deſires ſatisfied; and the chancellor of England made to account with them, and ſhew how the great ſums which had been raiſed were expended; menacing, that if he did not render ſuch an account as was agreeable to them, it would be the worſe for him.

Conſidering the various ills they had done to foreigners, they lodged themſelves before the Tower. You may eaſily ſuppoſe what a miſerable ſituation the king was in, and thoſe with him; for at times theſe rebellious fellows hooted as loud as if the devils were in them.

About evening, a council was held in the preſence of the king, the barons who were in the Tower with him, ſir William Walworth the mayor, and ſome of the principal citizens, when it was propoſed to arm themſelves, and during the night to fall upon theſe wretches, who were in the ſtreets and amounted to ſixty thouſand, while they were aſleep and drunk, for then they might be killed like flies, and not one in twenty among them had arms. The citizens were very capable of doing this,

this, for they had ſecretly received into their houſes their friends and ſervants, properly prepared to act.

Sir Robert Knolles remained in his houſe, guarding his property, with more than ſix ſcore companions completely armed, who would have inſtantly ſallied forth. Sir Perducas d'Albreth was alſo in London at that period, and would have been of great ſervice; ſo that they could have muſtered upwards of eight thouſand men, well armed. But nothing was done; for they were too much afraid of the commonalty of London; and the adviſers of the king, the earl of Saliſbury and others, ſaid to him,—'Sir, if you can appeaſe them by fair words, it will be ſo much the better, and good humouredly grant them what they aſk; for, ſhould we begin what we cannot go through, we ſhall never be able to recover it: it will be all over with us and our heirs, and England will be a deſert.'

This council was followed, and the mayor ordered to make no movement. He obeyed, as in reaſon he ought. In the city of London, with the mayor, there are twelve ſheriffs*, of whom nine were for the king and three for theſe wicked people, as it was afterwards diſcovered, and for which they then paid dearly.

* *Twelve ſheriffs.* Froiſſart is miſtaken, as there are only two ſheriffs and twenty-ſix aldermen, including the mayor.

The aldermen were originally choſen for one year; but, in 1354, 'it was ordained that they ſhould not be removed without ſome ſpecial cauſe.'—*Stowe's Hiſt. of London.*

On

On Friday morning, thoſe lodged in the ſquare before St. Catherines, near the Tower, began to make themſelves ready: they ſhouted much, and ſaid, that if the king would not come out to them, they would attack the Tower, ſtorm it, and ſlay all in it.

The king was alarmed at theſe menaces, and reſolved to ſpeak with them; he therefore ſent orders for them to retire to a handſome meadow at Mile-end, where, in the ſummer time, people go to amuſe themſelves, and that there the king would grant them their demands. Proclamation was made in the king's name for all thoſe who wiſhed to ſpeak with him to go to the above-mentioned place, where he would not fail to meet them.

The commonalty of the different villages began to march thither; but all did not go, nor had they the ſame objects in view, for the greater part only wiſhed for the riches and deſtruction of the nobles, and the plunder of London. This was the paincipal cauſe of their rebellion, as they very clearly ſhewed; for when the gates of the Tower were thrown open, and the king, attended by his two brothers, the earls of Saliſbury, of Warwick, of Suffolk, ſir Robert de Namur, the lords de Vertain and de Gommegines, with ſeveral others, had paſſed through them, Wat Tyler, Jack Straw and John Ball, with upwards of four hundred, ruſhed in by force, and, running from chamber to chamber, found the archbiſhop of Canterbury, whoſe name was Simon*, a valiant and wiſe man, and chan-

* Simon de Sudbury. His name was Tibold; but he took the name de Sudbury from the place of his birth.

cellor

cellor of England, who had but juſt celebrated maſs before the king: he was ſeized by theſe raſcals, and beheaded. The prior of St. John's ſuffered the ſame fate, and likewiſe a Franciſcan friar, a doctor of phyſic, who was attached to the duke of Lancaſter, out of ſpite to his maſter, and alſo a ſerjeant at arms of the name of John Laige*. They fixed theſe four heads on long pikes, and had them carried before them through the ſtreets of London: when they had ſufficiently played with them, they placed them on London Bridge, as if they had been traitors to their king and country.

Theſe ſcoundrels entered the apartment of the princeſs, and cut her bed, which ſo much terrified her that ſhe fainted, and in this condition was by her ſervants and ladies carried to the river ſide, when ſhe was put into a covered boat, and conveyed to the houſe called The Wardrobe†, where ſhe continued that day and night like to a woman half dead, until ſhe was comforted by the king her ſon, as you ſhall preſently hear.

---

* Laige. Leg.—HOLLINGSHED.

† The King's Wardrobe was at this time in Carter-lane, Barnard's Caſtle-ward. For further particulars, ſee Stowe's hiſt. of London.

CHAP.

CHAP. LX.

THE NOBLES OF ENGLAND ARE IN GREAT DANGER OF BEING DESTROYED.—THREE OF THE PRINCIPAL LEADERS OF THE REBELS ARE PUNISHED, AND THE REST SENT BACK TO THEIR HOMES.

WHEN the king was on his way to the place called Mile-end, without London, his two brothers, the earl of Kent and ſir John Holland, ſtole off and galloped from his company, as did alſo the lord de Gommegines, not daring to ſhew themſelves to the populace at Mile-end for fear of their lives.

On the king's arrival, attended by the barons, he found upwards of ſixty thouſand men aſſembled from different villages and counties of England: he inſtantly advanced into the midſt of them, ſaying in a pleaſant manner,—'My good people, I am your king and your lord: what is it you want? and what do you wiſh to ſay to me?' Thoſe who heard him anſwered, 'We wiſh thou wouldſt make us free for ever, us, our heirs and our lands, and that we ſhould no longer be called ſlaves, nor held in bondage.' The king replied; 'I grant your wiſh: now therefore return to your homes and the places from whence you came, leaving behind two or three men from each village, to whom I will order

order letters to be given ſealed with my ſeal, which they ſhall carry back with every demand you have made fully granted: and, in order that you may be the more ſatisfied, I will direct that my banners ſhall be ſent to every ſtewardſhip, caſtlewick and corporation.'

Theſe words greatly appeaſed the novices and well-meaning ones who were there, and knew not what they wanted, ſaying,—'It is well ſaid: we do not wiſh for more.' The people were thus quieted, and began to return towards London.

The king added a few words, which pleaſed them much: 'You, my good people of Kent, ſhall have one of my banners; and you alſo of Eſſex, Suſſex, Bedford, Suffolk, Cambridge, Stafford and Lincoln, ſhall each of you have one; and I pardon you all for what you hitherto have done; but you muſt follow my banners, and now return home on the terms I have mentioned.' They unanimouſly replied, they would.

Thus did this great aſſembly break up, and ſet out for London.

The king inſtantly employed upwards of thirty ſecretaries, who drew up the letters as faſt as they could; and, having ſealed and delivered them to theſe people, they departed, and returned to their own counties.

The principal miſchief remained behind: I mean, Wat Tyler, Jack Straw and John Ball, who declared, that though the people were ſatisfied, they would not thus depart; and they had more than thirty thouſand who were of their mind. They

continued in the city, without any wiſh to have their letters, or the king's ſeal; but did all they could to throw the town into ſuch confuſion that the lords and rich citizens might be murdered, and their houſes pillaged and deſtroyed. The Londoners ſuſpected this, and kept themſelves at home, with their friends and ſervants, well armed and prepared, every one according to his abilities.

When the people had been appeaſed at Mile-end Green, and were ſetting off for their different towns as ſpeedily as they could receive the king's letters, king Richard went to the wardrobe, where the princeſs was in the greateſt fear: he comforted her, as he was very able to do, and paſſed there the night.

I muſt relate an adventure which happened to theſe clowns before Norwich, and to their leader, called William Liſter, who was from the county of Stafford.

On the ſame day, theſe wicked people burnt the palace of the Savoy, the church and houſe of St. John, the hoſpital of the Templars, pulled down the priſon of Newgate and ſet at liberty all the priſoners. There were collected numerous bodies from Lincolnſhire, Norfolk and Suffolk, who proceeded on their march towards London, according to the orders they they had received, under the direction of Liſter.

In their road they ſtopped near Norwich, and forced every one to join them, ſo that none of the commonalty remained behind. The reaſon why they ſtopped near Norwich was that the governor

of

of the town was a knight called ſir Robert Salle: he was not by birth a gentleman, but, having acquired great renown for his ability and courage, king Edward had created him a knight: he was the handſomeſt and ſtrongeſt man in England. Liſter and his companions took it into their heads they would make this knight their commander, and carry him with them, in order to be the more feared.

They ſent orders to him to come out into the fields to ſpeak with them, or they would attack and burn the city. The knight, conſidering it was much better for him to go to them than that they ſhould commit ſuch outrages, mounted his horſe, and went out of the town alone, to hear what they had to ſay. When they perceived him coming, they ſhewed him every mark of reſpect, and courteouſly entreated him to diſmount, and talk with them. He did diſmount, and committed a great folly: for, when he had ſo done, having ſurrounded him, they at firſt converſed in a friendly way, ſaying, —'Robert, you are a knight, and a man of great weight in this country, renowned for your valour: yet, notwithſtanding all this, we know who you are: you are not a gentleman, but the ſon of a poor maſon, juſt ſuch as ourſelves. Do you come with us, as our commander, and we will make ſo great a lord of you that one quarter of England ſhall be under your command.'

The knight, on hearing them thus ſpeak, was exceedingly angry; he would never have conſented to ſuch a propoſal; and, eyeing them with inflamed

looks, anſwered,—'Begone, wicked ſcoundrels and falſe traitors as you are: would you have me deſert my natural lord for ſuch blackguards as you? would you have me diſhonour myſelf? I had much rather you were all hanged, for that muſt be your end.' On ſaying this, he attempted to mount his horſe; but, his foot ſlipping from the ſtirrup, his horſe took fright. They then ſhouted out, and cried, 'Put him to death.' When he heard this, he let his horſe go; and, drawing a handſome Bourdeaux ſword, he began to ſkirmiſh, and ſoon cleared the crowd from about him, that it was a pleaſure to ſee. Some attempted to cloſe with him; but with each ſtroke he gave, he cut off heads, arms, feet, or legs. There were none ſo bold but were afraid; and ſir Robert performed that day marvellous feats of arms. Theſe wretches were upwards of forty thouſand; they ſhot and flung at him ſuch things, that had he been clothed in ſteel inſtead of being unarmed, he muſt have been overpowered: however, he killed twelve of them, beſides many whom he wounded. At laſt, he was overthrown, when they cut off his legs and arms, and rent his body in piecemeal.

Thus ended ſir Robert Salle, which was a great pity; and, when the knights and ſquires in England heard of it, they were much enraged.

On the Saturday moruing, the king left the wardrobe, and went to Weſtminſter, where he and all the lords heard maſs in the abbey. In this church, there is a ſtatue of our lady in a ſmall chapel, that has many virtues and performs great miracles,

racles, in which the kings of England have much faith. The king, having paid his devotions and made his offerings to this ſhrine, mounted his horſe about nine o'clock, as did the barons who were with him. They rode along the cauſeway to return to London; but, when they had gone a little way, he turned to a road on the left to go from London.

This day, all the rabble were again aſſembled, under the conduct of Wat Tyler, Jack Straw and John Ball, to parley at a place called Smithfield, where, every Friday, the horſe-market is kept. They amounted to upwards of twenty thouſand, all of the ſame ſort. Many more were in the city, breakfaſting and drinking Rheniſh and Malmſey Madeira wines, in taverns and at the houſes of the Lombards, without paying for any thing; and happy was he who could give them good cheer.

Thoſe who were collected in Smithfield had the king's banners, which had been given to them the preceding evening; and theſe reprobates wanted to pillage the city this ſame day, their leaders ſaying, 'that hitherto they had done nothing. The pardons which the king has granted will not be of much uſe to us: but, if we be of the ſame mind, we ſhall pillage this large, rich and powerful town of London before thoſe from Eſſex, Suffolk, Cambridge, Bedford, Warwick, Reading, Lancaſhire, Arundel, Guildford, Coventry, Lynne, Lincoln, York and Durham ſhall arrive; for they are on the road, and we know for certain that Vaquier* and

* Valquier,—probably Walker.

Liſter will conduct them hither. If we now plunder the city of the wealth that is in it, we ſhall have been beforehand, and ſhall not repent of ſo doing; but, if we wait for their arrival, they will wreſt it from us.' To this opinion all had agreed, when the king appeared in ſight, attended by ſixty horſe. He was not thinking of them, but intended to have continued his ride without coming into London: however, when he came before the abbey of St. Bartholomew, which is in Smithfield, and ſaw the crowd of people, he ſtopped, and ſaid he would not proceed until he knew what they wanted; and, if they were troubled, he would appeaſe them.

The lords who accompanied him ſtopped alſo, as was but right, ſince the king had ſtopped; when Wat Tyler, ſeeing the king, ſaid to his men, 'Here is the king: I will go and ſpeak with him: do not you ſtir from hence until I gave you a ſignal.' He made a motion with his hand, and added, 'When you ſhall ſee me make this ſign, then ſtep forward, and kill every one except the king; but hurt him not, for he is young, and we can do what we pleaſe with him; for, by carrying him with us through England, we ſhall be lords of it without any oppoſition.'

There was a doublet-maker of London, called John Ticle, who had brought ſixty doublets with which ſome of the clowns had dreſſed themſelves; and, on his aſking who was to pay, for he muſt have for them thirty good marcs, Tyler replied,—'Make thyſelf eaſy, man: thou ſhalt be well paid this day: look to me for it: thou haſt ſufficient ſecurity

curity for them. On ſaying this, he ſpurred the horſe on which he rode, and, leaving his men, galloped up to the king, and came ſo near that his horſe's head touched the crupper of that of the king. The firſt words he ſaid, when he addreſſed the king, were, 'King, doſt thou ſee all thoſe men there?' 'Yes,' replied the king: 'why doſt thou aſk?' 'Becauſe they are all under my command, and have ſworn by their faith and loyalty to do whatever I ſhall order.' 'Very well,' ſaid the king: 'I have no objections to it.' Tyler, who was only deſirous of a riot, anſwered, 'And thinkeſt thou, king, that thoſe people and as many more who are in the city, alſo under my command, ought to depart without having had thy letters? Oh no, we will carry them with us.' 'Why,' replied the king, 'ſo it has been ordered, and they will be delivered out one after the other; but, friend, return to thy companions, and tell them to depart from London: be peaceable and careful of yourſelves, for it is our determination that you ſhall all of you have your letters by villages and towns, as it had been agreed on.'

As the king finiſhed ſpeaking, Wat Tyler, caſting his eyes around him, ſpied a ſquire attached to the king's perſon bearing his ſword. Tyler mortally hated this ſquire; formerly they had had words together, when the ſquire ill-treated him. 'What art thou there?' cried Tyler: 'give me thy dagger.' 'I will not,' ſaid the ſquire: 'why ſhould I give it thee?' The king, turning to him, ſaid, 'Give it him, give it him;' which he did, though

much againſt his will. When Tyler took it, he began to play with it and turn it about in his hand, and, again addreſſing the ſquire, ſaid, 'Give me that ſword.' 'I will not,' replied the ſquire; 'for it is the king's ſword, and thou art not worthy to bear it, who art but a mechanick; and, if only thou and I were together, thou wouldſt not have dared to ſay what thou haſt for as large a heap of gold as this church.' 'By my troth,' anſwered Tyler, 'I will not eat this day before I have thy head.'

At theſe words, the mayor of London, with about twelve more, rode forward, armed under their robes, and, puſhing through the crowd, ſaw Tyler's manner of behaving: upon which, he ſaid, 'Scoundrel, how dare you thus behave in the preſence of the king, and utter ſuch words? It is too impudent for ſuch as thou.' The king then began to be enraged, and ſaid to the mayor, 'Lay hands on him.'

Whilſt the king was giving this order, Tyler had addreſſed the mayor, ſaying, 'Hey, in God's name, what I have ſaid, does it concern thee? what doſt thou mean?' 'Truly,' replied the mayor, who found himſelf ſupported by the king, 'does it become ſuch a ſtinking raſcal as thou art to uſe ſuch ſpeech in the preſence of the king, my natural lord? I will not live a day, if thou pay not for it.' Upon this, he drew a kind of ſcymitar he wore, and ſtruck Tyler ſuch a blow on the head as felled him to his horſe's feet. When he was down, he was ſurrounded on all ſides, ſo that his men could not ſee him;

him; and one of the king's ſquires, called John Standwich*, immediately leaped from his horſe, and, drawing a handſome ſword which he bore, thruſt it into his belly, and thus killed him.

His men, advancing, ſaw their leader dead, when they cried out,—'They have killed our captain: let us march to them, and ſlay the whole.' On theſe words, they drew up in a ſort of battle-array, each man having his bent bow before him.

The king certainly hazarded much by this action, but it turned out fortunate; for, when Tyler was on the ground, he left his attendants, ordering not one to follow him. He rode up to theſe rebellious fellows, who were advancing to revenge their leader's death, and ſaid to them,—'Gentlemen, what are you about? you ſhall have no other captain but me: I am your king: remain peaceable.' When the greater part of them heard theſe words, they were quite aſhamed, and thoſe inclined to peace began to ſlip away. The riotous ones kept their ground, and ſhewed ſymptoms of miſchief, and as if they were reſolved to do ſomething.

The king returned to his lords, and aſked them what ſhould next be done. He was adviſed to make for the fields; for the mayor ſaid, 'that to retreat or fly would be of no avail. It is proper we ſhould act thus, for I reckon that we ſhall very ſoon receive aſſiſtance from London, that is, from our good friends who are prepared and armed, with all their ſervants, in their houſes.'

* Standwich. Lord Berners calls him Sandwich; Stow, Cavendiſh.

While

While things remained in this ſtate, ſeveral ran to London, and cried out,—'They are killing the king! they are killing the king and our mayor.' Upon this alarm, every man of the king's party ſallied out towards Smithfield, and to the fields whither the king had retreated; and there were inſtantly collected from ſeven to eight thouſand men in arms.

Among the firſt, came ſir Robert Knolles and ſir Perducas d'Albreth, well attended*; and ſeveral of the aldermen, with upwards of ſix hundred men at arms, and a powerful man of the city called Nicholas Bramber, the king's draper, bringing with him a large force, who, as they came up, ranged themſelves in order, on foot, on each ſide of him. The rebels were drawn up oppoſite them: they had the king's banners, and ſhewed as if they intended to maintain their ground by offering combat.

The king created three knights; ſir William Walworth mayor of London, ſir John Standwich and ſir Nicholas Bramber. The lords began to

* In one of my MSS. there is the following addition:

'Sir Robert de Namur, ſir Robert Knolles and ſir Perducas d'Albreth were very angry that theſe wicked people ſo eaſily eſcaped, for they had put the town into great alarm for three days. Sir Henry de Sauſſelles, a young knight from Hainault who had accompanied ſir Robert de Namur, aſked why ſome revenge was not had for having kept the town in ſuch alarm. Sir Robert, upon this, aſked him if he had been frightened: 'Yes, by God, was I, very much; why ſhould I conceal it? And was not you?' 'No, by my troth, I was not; but if the king had not been here with us, we ſhould have run great riſk.'

converſe

converſe among themſelves, ſaying, 'What ſhall we do? We ſee our enemies, who would willingly have murdered us if they had gained the upper hand.' Sir Robert Knolles adviſed immediately to fall on them, and ſlay them; but the king would not conſent, ſaying,—'I will not have you act thus: you ſhall go and demand from them my banners: we ſhall ſee how they will behave when you make this demand; for I will have them by fair or foul means.' 'It is a good thought,' replied the earl of Saliſbury.

The new knights were therefore ſent, who, on approaching, made ſigns for them not to ſhoot, as they wiſhed to ſpeak with them. When they had come near enough to be heard, they ſaid,—'Now attend: the king orders you to ſend back his banners, and we hope he will have mercy on you.'

The banners were directly given up, and brought to the king. It was then ordered, under pain of death, that all thoſe who had obtained the king's letters ſhould deliver them up. Some did ſo; but not all. The king, on receiving them, had them torn in their preſence. You muſt know, that from the inſtant when the king's banners were ſurrendered, theſe fellows kept no order; but the greater part, throwing their bows to the ground, took to their heels and returned to London.

Sir Robert Knolles was in a violent rage that they were not attacked, and the whole of them ſlain; but the king would not conſent to it, ſaying, he would have ample revenge on them, which in truth he afterwards had.

Thus

Thus did theſe people diſperſe, and run away on all ſides. The king, the lords and the army returned in good array to London, to their great joy. The king immediately took the road to the wardrobe, to viſit the princeſs his mother, who had remained there two days and two nights under the greateſt fears, as indeed ſhe had cauſe. On ſeeing the king her ſon, ſhe was mightily rejoiced, and ſaid,—'Ha, ha, fair ſon, what pain and anguiſh have I not ſuffered for you this day!'

'Certainly, Madam,' replied the king, 'I am well aſſured of that; but now rejoice and thank God, for it behoves us to praiſe him, as I have this day regained my inheritance, and the kingdom of England, which I had loſt.'

The king remained the whole day with his mother. The lords retired to their own houſes. A proclamation was made through all the ſtreets, that every perſon who was not an inhabitant of London, and who had not reſided there for a whole year, ſhould inſtantly depart; for that, if there were any found of a contrary deſcription on Sunday morning at ſun-riſe, they would be arreſted as traitors to the king, and have their heads cut off.

After this proclamation had been heard, no one dared to infringe it; but all departed inſtantly to their homes, quite diſcomfited. John Ball and Jack Straw were found hidden in an old ruin, thinking to ſteal away; but this they could not do, for they were betrayed by their own men. The king and the lords were well pleaſed with their ſeizure: their heads were cut off, as was that of Tyler,

Tyler, and fixed on London bridge, in the place of thoſe gallant men whom they beheaded on the Thurſday*. The news of this was ſent through the neighbouring counties, that thoſe might hear of it who were on their way to London, according to the orders theſe rebels had ſent to them: upon which, they inſtantly returned to their homes, without daring to advance further.

---

* From the forementioned MS.

' This ſame week was James Liſter taken, who had murdered ſir Robert Salle. He and twelve others were executed with him. Thus were theſe traitors puniſhed. There are ſome who ſay, that John Ball and his accomplices were ſtrictly examined before they were put to death, and then owned that perſons of the higheſt rank and power had incited them to act as they had done. The king kept this confeſſion ſecret in his own mind, and returned thanks to God for his happy iſſue out of this danger. Very many were aſtoniſhed that the duke of Lancaſter, during all this rebellion, remained out of the kingdom, ſettling general matters on the borders of Scotland.

' The king ſent orders to the earl of Northumberland, that if the duke of Lancaſter ſhould attempt to enter any fortified town or caſtle, the gates ſhould be ſhut againſt him. The king made the ſaid earl his lieutenant of all the borders towards Scotland. Many noblemen and others were ſurpriſed at this, for it would ſeem as if the king ſuſpected the duke of being implicated with the rebels. But it was admitted, on all ſides, that he was inculpated without any grounds; for the firſt thing the rebels did, on entering London, was to march to the palace of the Savoy, and totally deſtroy and burn it. Now this did not ſhew that he was friendly to their cauſe. They alſo put to death ſeveral who were attached to him.'

CHAP.

CHAP. LXI.

A TRUCE BETWEEN THE ENGLISH AND SCOTS.—THE DUKE OF LANCASTER REMAINS IN SCOTLAND DURING THE REBELLION IN ENGLAND.

WE will now ſpeak of the truce which the duke of Lancaſter, who had remained on the borders of Scotland during the time of this rebellion in England, was negotiating with the earl of Douglas and other barons on the part of Scotland. The Scots were as well informed as the duke of the ſituation of England, though he did not take any notice of it to them, but went on with the treaty as if England were in perfect peace.

The buſineſs was ſo ably conducted by the commiſſioners on each ſide that a truce was made, for three years, between the two kingdoms.

When this treaty was concluded, the lords of the two countries viſited each other with much reſpect. The earl of Douglas ſaid to the duke of Lancaſter, —'My lord, we were well informed of the rebellion of the populace in England, and what peril the kingdom was in from that event: we therefore look on you as a valiant and prudent man, for having ſo frankly continued your negotiations without ever taking the leaſt notice of it; and we offer you, ſhould you think them neceſſary, five or ſix hundred

dred ſpears, which you will find ready and at your ſervice.'

'By my faith,' replied the duke, 'fair gentlemen, I thank you much for your gallant offer, which I do not refuſe; but I imagine his majeſty muſt have been ſo adviſed that all will turn out well. However, I wiſh to have paſſports from you, for myſelf and people, to go to your country, and reſide there, ſhould there be occaſion, until all theſe troubles be appeaſed.'

The earls of Douglas and Moray, who had full powers from the king, immediately complied with his requeſt. They then took their leave, and each party ſeparated: the Scots returned to Edinburgh, and the duke, with his attendants, to Berwick, thinking to enter the town, where he had left all his baggage; but ſir Matthew Redmayne, the governor, refuſed him entrance, and cloſed the gates againſt him. He told him he acted by orders from the earl of Northumberland, at that time lord warden of the county of Northumberland and of all thoſe parts, who had forbidden him to open the gates, and that he could do no otherwiſe.

The duke was much vexed on hearing theſe words, and thus anſwered; 'How, Matthew Redmayne, is there any one in Northumberland greater than I? Who has thus denied my entrance where I have left my baggage? from whence come ſuch orders?' 'By my faith, my lord, my orders are from the king, and what I do is very much againſt my will; but do it I muſt; and I entreat of you, for God's ſake, to excuſe me, for I am ſtrictly enjoined,

joined, on my honour and life, not to ſuffer you, or any of your people, to enter this town.'

You may ſuppoſe the duke of Lancaſter was much aſtoniſhed and enraged at theſe orders; not ſo much with the knight, but with thoſe who had given them; for when he had been labouring for the good of England, they were ſo ſuſpicious of him that they had refuſed him admittance into the firſt town of England, on his return from Scotland. He ſuppoſed that great fault had been found with him: however, he did not open his thoughts or intentions further, and no longer preſſed the knight. He ſaw no ſucceſs could come from it, for the knight would never have acted as he had done if he had not had expreſs commands: he therefore changed the ſubject of converſation, and aſked ſir Matthew if he had heard any news from England. He anſwered,—'None, except that the country was in confuſion, and that the king had written to the principal towns, barons and knights of this country to be ready to come to him the moment he ſhould ſend for them, ſtrictly forbidding, under pain of loſing their heads, all governors and captains of town and caſtles in Northumberland to ſuffer any one whatever to enter their places; and be aſſured they will punctually obey. But, with regard to the common people who are in rebellion about London, I know nothing I can depend on to relate to you, except that the officers in Suffolk, Lincoln, Cambridge, Stafford, Bedford and Norfolk have ſent information that the commonalty under their command, are very eager affairs ſhould turn out ill,

and

and that there ſhould be confuſion in the kingdom.' 'And in our counties,' ſaid the duke, 'of Derby and Leiceſter, there is not any commotion?' 'My lord,' replied the knight, 'I have not heard they have behaved ſo outrageouſly as thoſe of Lincoln and others.'

The duke, having muſed a little, took leave of the knight, and returned by the road he had come to Roxburgh Caſtle, where he was gladly received by the governor, whom he had placed there. The duke now weighed all matters, not knowing how affairs were going on in England, nor by whom he was beloved or hated, and whether he ſhould ſignify his ſituation to the barons of Scotland, and entreat of them to ſend him an eſcort of men at arms, according to the paſſport they had given. He followed this laſt plan, and ſent to the earl of Douglas at Dalkeith. The earl was greatly rejoiced at receiving the duke's letter, and much feaſted the meſſenger. He inſtantly informed the earl of Moray and his brother the earl of Mar, of the buſineſs, and directed that without fail they and their men ſhould be ready and mounted within three days at Lambir-law. Theſe lords, on receiving this intimation, ſummoned their people and neareſt friends, and came to Lambir-law, where they found the earl of Douglas. They then rode on together, amounting, in the whole, to full five hundred ſpears, to the abbey of Melroſe, nine ſmall leagues from Roxburgh. The barons of Scotland met the duke of Lancaſter on their road, when they embraced each other, and ſhewed every token of being glad at

meeting. They continued their journey to Edinburgh in company, converſing all the way. This was the capital of the kingdom, and where uſually the king reſided: it has a ſtrong caſtle and fair harbour; but the king was at that time abſent, being in the Highlands on a hunting party.

To pay greater honour to the duke of Lancaſter, the earl of Douglas and the Scots barons delivered up to him the caſtle of Edinburgh, for which he was very thankful; and he reſided there until he had received intelligence from England, which, however, was not ſo ſoon as he wiſhed.

Now ſee how evil-minded perſons and deceivers take on them to prate without any knowledge of facts. It was commonly reported through England, during the time of the rebellion, that the duke of Lancaſter had become a traitor to his lord and king, and had turned to the Scots party. But this was ſoon known to be contrary to the truth: however, theſe wicked people, in order to ſtir up the commonalty, and to create confuſion in the realm, had ſpread abroad ſuch reports, which were acknowledged at their executions, by Wat Tyler, Jack Straw, John Ball, Walker and Liſter, who had been the chief leaders of the rebels in England, and who had intended to have had five parts of the kingdom under their command. They had a particular hatred to the duke of Lancaſter, as they ſhewed on their entrance into London; for they inſtantly went and burnt the fine palace of the Savoy, not leaving an utenſil nor beam unburnt. In addition to this, they had publiſhed all over

England

England that he had turned to the ſide of Scotland; for which, in ſeveral parts, they had reverſed his arms, as if he had been a traitor. This was ſo ſeverely puniſhed that thoſe who had done ſuch things loſt their heads.

We will now relate what vengeance the king of England took on his rebellious ſubjects, during the time the duke of Lancaſter was in Scotland.

CHAP. LXII.

KING RICHARD JOURNEYS THROUGH ENGLAND FROM TOWN TO TOWN, PUNISHING THOSE WHO HAD BEEN PRINCIPALS OR ACTIVE IN THE LATE REBELLION.—THE DUKE OF LANCASTER RETURNS FROM SCOTLAND TO ENGLAND.

AFTER the executions of Tyler, Jack Straw, John Ball, William Liſter, Walker and ſeveral others at London, the people being appeaſed, the king reſolved to viſit his bailiwicks, caſtlewicks and ſtewardſhips, in order to puniſh the wicked and to recover the letters of pardon which had been forced from him, as well as to place the realm in its proper ſituation.

The king iſſued a ſecret ſummons for a certain number of men at arms to aſſemble at a fixed place, on a particular day, which was done. They amounted to five hundred ſpears and as many archers.

chers. When they were thus aſſembled, the king ſet out from London, attended only by his houſehold, and took the road to Kent, for in that quarter the rebellion had firſt broken out.

Theſe men at arms followed the king, but did not accompany him. The king entered the county of Kent, and came to a village called Comprinke*, when he had the mayor and all the men of the village called before him. On their being aſſembled in an open ſpace, the king ordered one of his council to remonſtrate with them, how much they had erred againſt him, and that they had nearly thrown England into deſolation and ruin; and becauſe this miſchief muſt have had ſome adviſers who had encouraged them in their wickedneſs, and it muſt be ſuppoſed that all were not equally guilty, it was better that the ringleaders ſhould ſuffer than the whole: his majeſty demanded that thoſe ſhould be pointed out who had been ſo culpable, under pain of incurring his indignation for ever, and being conſidered as traitors.

When thoſe preſent heard this harangue, and ſaw that the innocent might eſcape by pointing out the guilty, they looked at each other, and then ſaid; 'My lord, here is one by whom this town was firſt put into confuſion and excited to riſe.' He was immediately ſeized, and hanged; as were ſeven others. The letters patent which had been granted were demanded back: when they were given up,

* Comprinke It is ſo in lord Berners. Q. if not Oſpringe. See additions at the end of this chapter.

the

the king's officers tore them in pieces before their eyes, and caſt them away, and then ſaid,—'We command all ye who are here aſſembled, in the king's name, and under pain of death, to depart, every one peaceably to his own home; and that you never rebel more againſt the king, nor againſt his miniſters. By the puniſhment which has been inflicted, your former evil deeds are pardoned.'

The people cried out with one voice, 'God bleſs the king and his good council.'

They acted in the ſame manner at Propinke*, Canterbury, Sandwich, Germanie†, Conculle‡, and in the different parts of England where the people had rebelled; ſo that upwards of fifteen hundred were beheaded or hanged.

The king was adviſed to ſend for his uncle the duke of Lancaſter, then in Scotland, as every thing was now quieted. He ſent thither a knight of his houſehold, called ſir Nicholas Carnefelle. The knight ſet off, and continued his journey until he came to Edinburgh, where he found the duke and his attendants, who were very happy to ſee him, and entertained him handſomely. He delivered his credential letters from the king; and the duke made preparations to obey them, as was right, for he was very deſirous to return to England and to his eſtates.

On ſetting out for Roxburgh, he took his leave

---

* Propinke. Lord Berners has the ſame. Q. if not Rocheſter.

† Germanie. Q.

‡ Conculle. Q.

of the barons of Scotland, and thanked them for the honour and comfort they had given him, by maintaining him in their country the time he had wiſhed to ſtay there. The earls of Douglas and Moray, with all the Scottiſh knights, eſcorted him as far as the abbey of Melroſe, but did not croſs the Tweed.

The duke went to Roxburgh, from thence to Newcaſtle on Tyne, then to Durham and York; and, in all the towns and cities through which he paſſed, the inhabitants were drawn up to receive him.

At this period a gallant knight of England departed this life, ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, earl of Huntingdon and tutor to the king. He was buried with great pomp in the church of the Auguſtine friars. His funeral was attended by the king, the princeſs his mother, his two brothers, and by great numbers of prelates, barons and ladies of England. In truth, the gallant knight was very deſerving of it, for he poſſeſſed all the virtues which a knight at that time ought to have: he was gay, loyal, gallant, prudent, ſecret, generous, bold, determined and enterpriſing. Thus died ſir Guiſcard d'Angle.

ADDITIONS,

FROM A MS. IN THE HAFOD LIBRARY.

WHEN theſe firſt examples had been made on the leaders of the rebellion in London, St. Alban's, Norwich, Suffolk and Gloceſter, the king determined to viſit the whole of his kingdom, which he had not done ſince his coronation. His officers of juſtice had collected a body of evidence, reſpecting the late rebellion from the confeſſions of thoſe who had been beheaded.

The king, when he ſet out, took the road towards Canterbury, under a pretext of a pilgrimage to the ſhrine of St. Thomas of Becket: he was attended by the earls of Saliſbury, Suffolk and Devonſhire, and travelled in grand array. He remained two days at Rocheſter; for ſir John Newtoun, whom theſe wicked people had forced to be their captain, had, by the king's command made exact reſearches after the firſt inſtigators of this miſchief. He had found out ſome of the moſt culpable, who, without form of law, had their heads cut off and placed on the gates and bridge, and their quarters hung on the gibbet. The king departed from Rocheſter and came to Oſpringe, where four were

executed. He came thence to Canterbury; but why ſhould I make a long ſtory of it? There were put to death, in the different towns and bailiwicks, upwards of five hundred rebels; for they were eager in accuſing each other.

During this progreſs of the king, which he continued far into his realm, ſeveral of the great barons, ſuch as the earls of Warwick and Kent, ſir John Holland, ſir John Beauchamp, ſpoke to the king and to the earl of Saliſbury, in favour of the duke of Lancaſter; as did alſo the Londoners. The king readily conſented that two knights ſhould be ſent to the duke, for him to return into England and to his preſence; for that he would not liſten to any complaints againſt him or his other uncles. The earl of Northumberland was commanded to go himſelf in ſearch of him.

The two knights journeyed on until they arrived at Newcaſtle on Tyne, where they found the earl of Northumberland. He had been informed of their coming, and received them handſomely. They produced their letters, when he took from the packet what was addreſſed to him; and, having read it through, was much pleaſed with the commiſſion to ſeek the duke of Lancaſter; for he had heard the duke was very angry with him. He therefore wrote letters of excuſe; and, when theſe two barons met, peace was made between them.

They returned together to England, and found the king arrived at his manor of Eltham, a few miles from London. At this time alſo, the earl

of

of Buckingham came back from Wales, and went to Pleſhy, where he reſided as formerly. The king and his uncles diſſembled their ſentiments of each other for ſome time; but at laſt it broke out, as you will hear in the continuance of this hiſtory,

CHAP. LXIII.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER CONCEIVES ANGER AGAINST THE EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND, FOR THE REFUSAL OF ADMITTANCE INTO BERWICK.

WHEN the duke of Lancaſter was returned from Scotland, and had explained to the council the truce he had negotiated between the two kingdoms, he did not forget to mention how ſir Matthew Redmayne, governor of Berwick, (though he blamed not that knight) had ſhut the gates of Berwick againſt him, by orders from the earl of Northumberland. It was ſuch an act, he ſaid, as he could never forgive; and thus ſpoke of it, with the intent to ſee if the king his nephew would own it. This the king did, but it ſeemed to the duke as if it were faintly. The duke was appeaſed for that time; but he waited for the feaſt of our Lady at mid-Auguſt, when the king was to hold a ſolemn court at Weſtminſter.

There

There were at this court great numbers of the nobles and barons of England; the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham, with many barons from the north. The king created, this day, the young earl of Pembroke, ſir Robert Mowbray, ſir Nicholas Twiford, and ſir Adam François, knights. He did ſo becauſe he intended, after the feaſt, to march towards Reading, Oxford, and through thoſe parts of the country, to puniſh the rebels in the ſame manner as he had done in Kent and the other counties.

During this feaſt, and after the dinner, high words paſſed between the duke of Lancaſter and the earl of Northumberland. The duke ſaid,—'Harry Percy, I did not think you was ſo great a man in England, that you would dare to order any cities, towns or caſtles, to be ſhut againſt the duke of Lancaſter.'

The earl reſpectfully anſwered; 'My lord, I do not deny the knight's act at Berwick: but I was ordered by ſtrict commands of my lord the king, who ſits there, on my honour and under pain of death, not to ſuffer any one, lord or otherwiſe, to enter the cities, towns or caſtles of Northumberland, if he were not an inhabitant of thoſe places; and the king, if he pleaſe, or the lords of his council, may make my excuſes; for they well knew you were in Scotland, and you ought to have been excepted out of theſe orders.'

'How, earl of Northumberland,' replied the duke, 'do you think it was neceſſary there ſhould have been a reſervation

a reſervation in regard to me? who am uncle to the king, and who have my inheritance to guard, which, next to the king's, is the greateſt, and who for the good of the realm have made this journey into Scotland? Your anſwer does not excuſe you from having much wronged my honour, in thus giving credit to the reports in circulation that I wiſhed to commit treaſon with the Scots, by ſhutting againſt me the king my lord's towns, and in particular that in which my proviſion and ſtores were. For which reaſons I tell you, you have ill behaved; and for the blame you have thus caſt on me, and to clear myſelf in the preſence of my lord the king, I throw down my glove: take it up if you dare.'

Upon this, the king ſtepped forth and ſaid,—'Fair uncle of Lancaſter, whatever has been done I avow as my orders. Take up your glove, and recal your words. I muſt excuſe the earl of Northumberland; for ſtrictly, and on his life, did we order him to keep every town cloſe ſhut that was on the borders of Scotland: and know, that our kingdom was in ſuch confuſion and peril, when you were in thoſe parts, that it could not ſupport itſelf. It muſt, therefore, have been through the fault of the ſecretary, or the neglect of our council; for, in truth, you ought to have been excepted. I therefore beg of you, and will, that you lay aſide your ill humour: I take all on myſelf, and clear the earl of Northumberland.'

The earls of Arundel, Saliſbury, Suffolk, Stafford and

and Devonſhire, caſt themſelves on their knees to the duke, and ſaid,—'My lord, you hear how amicably the king ſpeaks to you: you ought to condeſcend to what he requeſts.' The duke, who was much inflamed, ſaid, 'I will not ſay more about it.'—He was ſilent a ſhort ſpace, when, raiſing the barons, and thanking them, he ſaid: 'Fair Gentlemen, there is not one of you, if ſuch an affront had happened to him, who would not have been as much angered as I am; but ſince the king wiſhes otherwiſe, it is but right that I ſhould comply.'

Peace was made between the duke of Lancaſter and the earl of Northumberland by means of the king and the barons, who interceded for it. On the ſecond day, the king began his journey, as before mentioned, attended by five hundred ſpears and as many archers, through different counties, where he executed juſtice on the ill-intentioned and on thoſe who had rebelled againſt him.

We will now leave the king of England, and ſpeak of his uncle, the earl of Cambridge, and of his voyage to Portugal.

CHAP. LXIV.

THE EARL OF CAMBRIDGE AND HIS ARMY ARRIVE AT LISBON.

YOU have before heard how the earl of Cambridge with five hundred men at arms and as many archers were lying in the harbour of Plymouth, waiting

waiting for a wind to carry them to Portugal. At laſt, a favourable wind came, when they heaved their anchors, and the whole fleet made ſail as ſtraight as they could for Liſbon.

They coaſted, the two firſt days, the ſhores of England: on the third, they entered the Spaniſh main, when they had a very ſevere gale; inſomuch that the fleet was in great danger from the tempeſt, more eſpecially thoſe veſſels in which the Gaſcons were, ſuch as ſir John de Châteauneuf, the ſouldich de l'Eſtrade, the lord de la Barde, with about forty men at arms, knights and ſquires, who were driven out of ſight of the Engliſh fleet.

The earl of Cambridge, ſir William Beauchamp marſhal of the army, ſir Matthew Gournay conſtable, and the canon de Roberſac, with others, eſcaped, through good fortune, the bad effects of the ſtorm, and, ſailing by the ſtars, arrived in the harbour of Liſbon. News of this was inſtantly carried to the king, who was daily expecting the Engliſh: he immediately ſent his knights and miniſters to welcome them, by whom they were moſt reſpectfully received, and the earl of Cambridge, with the Engliſh and foreign knights, conducted to the king.

The king advanced out of his palace to meet the earl, and received them all moſt honourably one after the other: he led them to the palace, where wine and ſpices were ſet before them. John of Cambridge, the earl's ſon, was with him, which much pleaſed the king, who ſaid, 'He is my ſon, and ſhall have my daughter.' This was very proper,

proper, for they were of the ſame age. The children were much pleaſed, and converſed with each other arm in arm.

Whilſt the king of Portugal and his knights paid every attention to the earl and his companions, and lodged them in the town, the others, on diſembarking, were alſo well quartered; for the city of Liſbon is large, handſomely built, and well furniſhed with every thing: the ſtewards of the houſehold of the king had alſo been careful to provide it with all things neceſſary againſt the arrival of the Engliſh. They found it, therefore, amply ſtored; and the lords were comfortable and in high ſpirits, though at times they were very uneaſy about the lord de Châteauneuf, the ſouldich de l'Eſtrade and the lord de la Barde, and their men, whom they looked upon as loſt, or that the tempeſt had driven them among the Moors in the kingdoms of Granada or Benmarine: if it ſhould have ſo happened, they might as well have periſhed at ſea. All this gave them great concern, and they bitterly lamented them.

In truth, they were to be pitied; for they ſuffered ſo much in the tempeſt none ever endured the like and ſurvived it. They were driven through the ſtraits of the Moors, near to the kingdoms of Benmarine and Tremeçen, and were in great danger of being taken by the Saracens; ſo that they conſidered themſelves as dead men, never expecting to land nor to get into any ſafe harbour, and they were forty days in this extreme peril.

At

At laſt, they had a wind which drove them back again into the Spaniſh main, whether they would or not. When the wind became calm, they anchored, and, by good fortune, fell in with two large ſhips, going, as the crews ſaid, to Liſbon, from Flanders, laden with merchandiſe and wines.

Theſe knights tacked about, and, having hoiſted their pennons, followed the Liſbon ſhips, who, having only merchants on board, were not perfectly eaſy on ſeeing this armed veſſel approach, with the banners of St. George diſplayed in various parts of it. However, when they came nearer, finding who they were, they rejoiced to ſee them. Theſe merchants put the knights once more in great peril, and I will tell you how.

The knights inquired if they could give them any intelligence; and they, in anſwer, ſaid, that the king of Portugal and the Engliſh were in Spain, and had beſieged the king of Caſtille. They were delighted with this news, and declared they would go thither, as they were now near the ſhores of Seville. They then left the wine-merchants, and ordered their mariners to make ſail for Seville, as their friends were there at the ſiege. They anſwered, 'In God's name, will we obey you;' and, having ſteered for Seville, came very near the harbour. The ſailors, who were prudent and wiſhed not to run their maſters into any danger, ordered a boy, to climb the maſt, and ſee if there were any appearance of a ſiege, either by land or water, before Seville. The boy, who had a good ſight, anſwered he ſaw nothing like it. The ſailors then addreſſing their

their lords, ſaid,—'Liſten, fair Gentlemen: you have had falſe information, for certainly there is not any ſiege before Seville, either by land or water: had there been any appearance of it, the harbour would have ſhewn it. We have no occaſion to go thither, unleſs we wiſh to be made priſoners; for the king of Caſtille is ſurely there, as it is a city in which he delights to dwell preferably to any other.'

The ſailors were with difficulty believed: however, they were ſo at laſt, when, quitting the coaſt of Seville, they entered the ſea of Portugal, and arrived in the port of Liſbon preciſely at the very hour when their obſequies were performing in the church of St. Catherine at Liſbon. The barons and knights were all clothed in black, for they conſidered them as having periſhed at ſea. You may ſuppoſe the joy was great when they learnt their ſafe arrival, and that they had eſcaped ſhipwreck. They enjoyed themſelves much together, and the Gaſcon knights ſoon forgot their misfortunes.

We will leave the affairs of Portugal, as no deeds of arms were done, and return to Flanders, and ſay what happened there at this period.

END OF THE FIFTH VOLUME.

Brooke, Printer,
Paternoſter Row.

00036223

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 28 September, 2015